# Reviews and syntheses: Physical and biogeochemical processes associated with upwelling in the Indian Ocean

Puthenveettil Narayana Menon Vinayachandran<sup>1\*</sup>, Yukio Masumoto<sup>2,3</sup>, Michael J. Roberts<sup>4</sup>, Jenny A. 3 Huggett<sup>5,6</sup>, Issufo Halo<sup>5,7</sup>, Abhisek Chatteriee<sup>8</sup>, Prakash Amol<sup>9</sup>, Garuda V. M. Gupta<sup>10</sup>, Arvind Singh<sup>11</sup>, 4 Arnab Mukheriee<sup>12</sup>, Satva Prakash<sup>8</sup>, Lynnath E. Beckley<sup>13</sup>, Eric Jorden Raes<sup>14</sup>, Raleigh Hood<sup>15</sup> 5 6 7 <sup>1</sup>Centre for Atmospheric and Oceanic Sciences, Indian Institute of Science, Bengaluru, 560012, India 8 <sup>2</sup>Graduate School of Science, University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan 9 <sup>3</sup>Application Laboratory, Japan Agency for Marine-Earth Science and Technology, Kanagawa, 236-0001, Japan 10 <sup>4</sup> Nelson Mandela University, Port Elizabeth, South Africa & National Oceanography Centre, Southampton, United 11 Kingdom 12 <sup>5</sup>Oceans and Coasts Research, Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment, Private Bag X4390, Cape Town 13 8000, South Africa 14 <sup>6</sup>Department of Biological Sciences and Marine Research Institute, University of Cape Town, Private Bag X3, 15 Rondebosch, 7701, Cape Town, South Africa 16 <sup>7</sup>Department of Conservation and Marine Sciences, Cape Peninsula University of Technology, PO Box 652, Cape Town 17 8000, South Africa 18 <sup>8</sup>Indian National Centre for Indian Ocean Services, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Hyderabad, 500090, India 19 <sup>9</sup>CSIR-National Institute of Oceanography, Regional Centre, Visakhapatnam, 530017, India 20 <sup>10</sup>Centre for Marine Living Resources and Ecology, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Kochi, 682 508, India 21 <sup>11</sup>Physical Research Laboratory, Ahmedabad, 380009, India 22 <sup>12</sup> National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Goa, India 23 <sup>13</sup> Environmental and Conservation Sciences, Murdoch University, Perth, Western Australia 6150, Australia 24 <sup>14</sup> Dept. of Biology and Ocean Frontier Institute, Dalhousie University, Halifax, NS, B3H 4R2, Canada 25 <sup>15</sup> University of Maryland Center for Environmental Science, Cambridge, MD, USA 26 27 \*Correspondence to: P. N. Vinavachandran (vinav@iisc.ac.in)

Abstract. The Indian Ocean presents two distinct climate regimes. The North Indian Ocean is dominated by the monsoons, whereas the seasonal reversal is less pronounced in the south. The prevailing wind pattern produces upwelling along different parts of the coast in both hemispheres during different times of the year. Additionally, dynamical processes and eddies either cause or enhance upwelling. This paper reviews the phenomena of upwelling along the coast of the Indian Ocean extending from the tip of South Africa to the southern tip of the west coast of Australia. Observed features, underlying mechanisms, and the impact of upwelling on the ecosystem are presented.

35

36 In the Agulhas Current region, cyclonic eddies associated with Natal pulses drive slope upwelling and enhance chlorophyll 37 concentrations along the continental margin. The Durban break-away eddy spun-up by the Agulhas upwells cold nutrient-38 rich water. Additionally, topographically induced upwelling occurs along the inshore edges of the Agulhas Current. Wind-39 driven coastal upwelling occurs along the south coast of Africa and augments the dynamical upwelling in the Agulhas 40 Current. Upwelling hotspots along the Mozambique coast are present in the northern and southern sectors of the channel. 41 and are ascribed to dynamical effects of ocean circulation in addition to wind forcing. Interaction of mesoscale eddies with 42 the western boundary, dipole eddy pair interactions, and passage of cyclonic eddies cause upwelling. Upwelling along the 43 southern coast of Madagascar is caused by Ekman wind-driven mechanism and by eddy generation, and is inhibited by the 44 Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current. Seasonal upwelling along the East African coast is primarily driven by the Northeast 45 monsoon winds and enhanced by topographically induced shelf-breaking and shear instability between the East African 46 Coastal Current and the island chains. The Somali coast presents a strong case for the classical Ekman type of upwelling; 47 such upwelling can be inhibited by the arrival of deeper thermocline signals generated in the offshore region by wind stress 48 curl. Upwelling is nearly uniform along the coast of Arabia, caused by the alongshore component of the summer monsoon 49 winds and modulated by the arrival of Rossby waves generated in the offshore region by cyclonic wind stress curl. Along 50 the west coast of India, upwelling is driven by coastally trapped waves together with the alongshore component of the 51 monsoon winds. Along the southern tip of India and Sri Lanka, the strong Ekman transport dives upwelling. Upwelling 52 along the east coast of India is weak and occurs during summer, caused by alongshore winds. In addition, mesoscale eddies 53 lead to upwelling, but the arrival of river water plumes inhibits upwelling along this coast. Southeasterly winds drive 54 upwelling along the coast of Sumatra and Java during summer, with Kelvin wave propagation originating from the 55 Equatorial Indian Ocean affecting the magnitude and extent of the upwelling. Both ENSO and IOD events cause large 56 variability of upwelling here. Along the west coast of Australia, which is characterized by the anomalous Leeuwin Current, 57 southerly winds can cause sporadic upwelling, which is prominent along the southwest, central, and Gascoyne coasts during 58 summer. Open ocean upwelling in the southern tropical Indian Ocean and within the Sri Lanka Dome are driven primarily 59 by the wind stress curl but are also impacted by Rossby wave propagations.

61 Upwelling is a key driver enhancing biological productivity in all sectors of the coast, as indicated by enhanced sea surface 62 chlorophyll concentrations. Additional knowledge at varying levels has been gained through in situ observations and model 63 simulations. In the Mozambique Channel, upwelling simulates new production, and circulation redistributes the production 64 generated by upwelling and mesoscale eddies, leading to observations of higher ecosystem impacts along the edges of 65 Similarly, along the southern Madagascar coast, biological connectivity is influenced by the transport of eddies. 66 phytoplankton from upwelling zones. Along the coast of Kenya, both productivity rates and zooplankton biomass are higher 67 during the upwelling season. Along the Somali coast, accumulation of upwelled nutrients in the northern part of the coast 68 leads to spatial heterogeneity in productivity. In contrast, productivity is more uniform along the coasts of Yemen and Oman. 69 Upwelling along the west coast of India has several biogeochemical implications, including oxygen depletion, 70 denitrification, and high production of CH4 and dimethyl sulfide. Although weak, wind-driven upwelling leads to significant 71 enhancement of phytoplankton in the northwest Bay of Bengal during the summer monsoon. Along the Sumatra and Java 72 coasts, upwelling affects the phytoplankton composition and assemblages. Dissimilarities in copepod assemblages occur 73 during the upwelling periods along the west coast of Australia. Phytoplankton abundance characterizes inshore edges of the 74 slope during upwelling season, and upwelling eddies are associated with krill abundance.

75

76 The review identifies the northern coast of the Arabian Sea and eastern coasts of the Bay of Bengal as the least observed 77 sectors. Additionally, sustained long-term observations with high temporal and spatial resolutions along with high-resolution 78 modelling efforts are recommended for a deeper understanding of upwelling, its variability, and its impact on the ecosystem.

- 79
- 80
- 81

82

# 84 **1. Introduction**

85 Tangential winds that blow parallel to the coast result in the transport of water away from the coast (Ekman, 1905). The 86 water that is transported from near the coast must be replaced by water from below, usually from a depth range of 100 -87 300m. This upward motion of water from below is termed as (coastal) upwelling (Sverdrup, 1937). While the dynamics of 88 the system primarily concerns the upward flow, the change in properties of water near the surface is what concerns most 89 for the ecosystem and biogeochemistry. The water that upwells comes from below the Ekman layer, and therefore cooler, 90 denser, and rich in nutrients. The transport away from the coast is governed by Ekman dynamics, and owing to the higher 91 density of the upwelled water near the coast, a current is established parallel to the coast. The existence of a physical 92 boundary, the coast, is a necessary condition for the upwelling to take place. Across the equator, the Coriolis force that 93 changes its sign creates a dynamical boundary that supports upwelling. Thus, easterlies drive poleward Ekman transport on 94 both sides of the equator causing equatorial upwelling. Upwelling is possible in the open ocean as well, even in the absence 95 of a physical or dynamic boundary when the surface winds possess strong positive vorticity. Cyclonic wind stress curl leads 96 to divergence within the surface layer leading to upward vertical velocity known as Ekman suction, which is often 97 represented by a 'thermocline dome'. Upwelling has great significance in ocean science owing to its enormous potential 98 to (1) cool the sea surface by several degrees and (2) increase the productivity of near-surface water by several orders of 99 magnitudes (Messie et al., 2009; Messie and Chavez, 2015), compared to regions unaffected by upwelling.

100

101 Much of our present understanding of upwelling is derived from studies on eastern boundary current upwelling systems 102 (EBUS), California, Iberian, Canary, Humboldt, and Benguela are the well-known EBUS in the world oceans (Kampf and 103 Chapman, 2016). These classical eastern boundary upwelling systems are driven by winds blowing towards the equator, 104 and effected by the offshore Ekman transport. The alongshore winds acting on a stratified ocean generates a coastal parallel 105 jet and coastally trapped waves affect circulations and the regional extent of circulations (Allen, 1973, Suginohara, 1982). 106 Mesoscale eddies and filaments associated with upwelling systems affect both dynamical structure and transport of 107 properties and materials in the upwelling regions (Capet et al., 2008). Owing to the alignment of the irregular coastline with 108 respect to the winds, the intensity of upwelling may vary along a given coastline and, consequently, there are regions known 109 as upwelling nodes or centres where the intensity of upwelling is discernibly stronger. In the Indian Ocean, the upwelling 110 is seasonal and strongest upwelling regions are located along the western boundary. Nevertheless, even for these upwelling 111 systems, the dynamics that have been demonstrated to be in effect in EBUS holds good.

112

The upwelling process connects the upper wind-driven part of the ocean with the relatively quiescent sub-surface regimes. Upwelling brings cold, nutrient-rich bottom waters to the surface layer, which significantly supports primary production and hence a higher food web. This connection is vital for cycling tracers and nutrients and invigorating marine life across all states of the food chain. Water upwelled along EBUS harbour some of the world's largest marine ecosystems (Carr, et al., 2003, Chavez and Toggweiler, 1995, Messié et al., 2009. Hutchings et al., 2009, Montecino and Lange, 2009, Checkley and Barth, 2009, Arístegui et al., 2009). Globally, the upwelling systems occupy less than 2% of the total oceanic area, but they alone contribute to ~20% of the total fish catch (Pauly and Christensen, 1995). Upwelling links the ocean interior with the surface where the ocean and atmosphere interact, exchanging heat, water, and gases, and serves as the source for major biogeochemical and ecological transformations. Though the impact of upwelling is most pronounced regionally, its impact could affect basin-scale circulation and regional climate.

123

124 The Indian Ocean is different from the Atlantic and Pacific due to its unique geographical setting marked by the northern 125 land boundary located in the tropics itself. The vast landmass situated to the north of the ocean gives rise to the region's 126 monsoon climate, which is characterized by seasonally reversing winds and copious rainfall during summer. The monsoon 127 winds (Figure 1A) are southwesterly during May-September and northeasterly during December-February. The transition 128 from one monsoon to the other occurs during the spring and autumn months of March - April and October - November, 129 respectively (Schott and McCreary, 2001). Therefore, the most striking characteristic of the upwelling in the Indian Ocean, 130 particularly concerning other typical Eastern boundary upwelling systems, is its seasonality which has been highlighted by 131 reviews in the past. A review of the coastal currents in the Indian Ocean was carried out by Shetve and Gouveia (1998). 132 Schott and McCreary (2001) provide a comprehensive review of the monsoon circulation in the Indian Ocean, and an update 133 of this review has been given in Schott et al. (2009). Shankar et al. (2002) has presented a detailed description of the monsoon 134 currents and a synthesis of their dynamics. More recently, Hood et al. (2017) have reviewed the boundary currents in the 135 Indian Ocean and their impact on biogeochemistry. Indian Ocean science has witnessed a surge in activities in the last 136 decade. Several multidisciplinary research programs that cut across institutional and national boundaries have been deployed 137 towards developing new data sets and testing hitherto unknown hypotheses. Concurrently, numerical models have evolved 138 into higher levels of sophistication, resolution, accuracy, and complexity. Motivated by the rapid progress that the Indian 139 Ocean has witnessed in the last few years, this paper aims to synthesize the knowledge that has accumulated in recent times 140 focussing on upwelling regions that have not received enough attention in past reviews. It is expected that the review will 141 assist in developing future programs in the Indian Ocean coastal oceanography such as those outlined in the United Nations 142 Decade of Ocean Science for Sustainable Development (2021-2030) (https://www.oceandecade.org).

143

The alignment of the coastline with respect to the winds offers favourable conditions for upwelling along several parts of the Indian Ocean boundaries (Figure 1B). The southwesterlies are favourable for upwelling along the western boundary of the North Indian Ocean, particularly along the coast of Somalia and Oman. As they approach the west coast of India, the southwesterlies turn towards the equator and blow nearly parallel to the west coast of India, owing to the presence of the Sahyadri (Western Ghats) mountain ranges (Kurian and Vinayachandran, 2007). The summer monsoon winds are also favourable for upwelling along the southern coast of Sri Lanka and along the east coast of India. Persistent wind stress curl in the Southern Tropical Indian Ocean (STIO) leads to a very shallow thermocline (Xie et al., 2002) and makes it one of the

- 151 strongest open ocean upwelling regions. In the southern hemisphere, upwelling has been observed in the Agulhas Current
- region, Mozambique channel, in the region of the East African Coastal Current, and along the coast of Java and Australia.
- 153 In the section that follows, upwelling in each of the above regions is described.

## 154 2. Coastal Upwelling Systems

In this section, each of the coastal upwelling systems in the Indian Ocean are described in detail. We first present an overview using historic portrayal followed by recent observations; these sections render characteristics of the upwelling and its impact on physical parameters. A review of the present status of modelling these upwelling systems is presented next, along with mechanisms that drive upwelling. The impact of upwelling on the marine ecosystem is discussed next, including those on the fisheries. Progress made during the IIOE-2 (2015–2010) era is paid particular attention, major outstanding issues are listed, and plausible approaches are suggested.

#### 161 **2.1 Agulhas Current**

# 162 **2.1.1. Background**

The warm, fast-flowing Agulhas Current is the western-most outflow of the Indian Ocean. In the form of a 1000 km-long western boundary current along the south-eastern side of the African continent, it transports an average of 84 Sv of upper IO water into the south Atlantic and Subtropical Convergence (STC; Lutjeharms, 2006; Beal et al., 2015). It is considered the largest of the WBCs. As such, the Agulhas Current plays a critical role in the planets global circulation of thermocline water and the MOC (Rahmstorf, 2003; Donners and Drijfhout, 2004; Biastoch et al., 2008; Beal et al., 2011).

168

169 Agulhas Current originates from the Mozambique Channel, the East Madagascar Current, and the southern Indian Ocean 170 subtropical gyre (Figure 2) carrying water masses from the Arabian Sea, Red Sea, and the equatorial Indian Ocean on the 171 shoreward side, while offshore waters comprise Atlantic Ocean, Southern Ocean, and southeast Indian Ocean (Lutjeharms 172 2006; Beal et al., 2006). This convergence occurs in the vicinity of the Delagoa Bight in southern part of Mozambigue. With 173 a volume transport that can at times reach 160 Sv, it is one of the most powerful WBCs. Typically the narrow core ( $\sim 200$ 174 km wide) has a velocity of  $\sim 2 \text{ ms}^{-1}$  with maximum reaching 3.5 m s<sup>-1</sup> (Lutieharms, 2006; Beal et al., 2015). The core closely 175 follows the steep slope of the African continent once south of the Delagoa Bight at 27°S. The very narrow shelf (~3 km) off 176 northern KwaZulu-Natal (also known as Maputoland) ensures that the warm subtropical surface waters reach the coast and 177 consequently extend the subtropical IO fauna and flora towards the poles (Turpie et al., 2000; Griffiths et al., 2010). South 178 of Cape St Lucia, the coastline retracts northwards away from the shelf edge for some 120 km forming the KZN Bight

179 (Figure 2). Mid-bight the Agulhas Current is some 40 km from the coast following the undeviating continental edge/slope.

180 The small KZN Bight which has a shelf edge depth of around 100 m and mid shelf depth of 50 m, offers the only refuge 181 from the strong Agulhas Current flow in the upper half of its trajectory.

182

183 Further downstream, more or less mid-length, the core again moves away from the coast as the continental shelf gradually 184 widens at 27°E, near Port Alfred (Figure 2) to become the Agulhas Bank — an area of great importance for spawning and 185 the early life cycle of many of South Africa's commercially fisheries (Hutchings et al., 2002). The Agulhas Bank is the most 186 expansive shelf on the African continent and has a shelf edge at 200 m depth with typical mid shelf depths around 120-150 187 m. The eastern part of the bank up to 22°E is commonly influenced by plumes of warm water from current meanders which 188 extend northward (Lutjeharms and Connel, 1989; Krug et al., 2017). The Agulhas Bank has some of the most intense 189 thermoclines found world-wide (Swart and Largier, 1987). At the southern tip of the Agulhas Bank the jet-like Agulhas 190 Current becomes unstable with several possible trajectories (Lutjeharms, 2006). Ordinarily the core retroflects south then 191 eastwards forming the Agulhas Return Current (ARC) which flows along to the north of the Subtropical Convergence 192 (STC) — a divide between the IO and colder Southern Ocean. A temporary northward displacement of the Return Current 193 around the Agulhas Plateau (Figure 2) at times causes a fusion (occlusion) of the ARC with the Agulhas Current resulting 194 in the formation of warm Agulhas Rings which propagate westwards into the south Atlantic Ocean — a critical contribution 195 to the MOC (Biastoch et al., 2008; Beal et al., 2011). Occasionally the end of the Agulhas Current turns northwards and 196 follows the steep slope of the Western Agulhas Bank.

197

Surface temperatures of the Agulhas Current range between 22 and 30°C in the northern reaches reflecting seasonal oscillations but these decrease with southward latitude along the current's length in both seasons (Lutjeharms, 2006). Being of subtropical origins, the surface waters of the Agulhas Current are oligotrophic, but at depth reflect nutrient concentrations typical of the SEC. As with all WBCs, isopycnals slope upwards across the current towards the shelf slope moving nutrient-rich, cooler water to shallower depths (Lutjeharms et al., 2000; Figure 3).

203

Notwithstanding the current's planetary importance, it also is a major driver of local processes that in particular underpin the shelf ecosystems along the east and southern shelf region of South Africa. This is underscored in the composite image shown in **Figure 4** where several important productivity features are highlighted by enhanced surface chlorophyll levels along the current's boundary. Some are bathymetrically fixed — others transient. All are underpinned by some form of upwelling of cooler, nutrient-rich water.

209

# 211 **2.1.2.** Mechanisms

#### 212

# 213 2.1.2.1 Transient meanders and cyclonic eddies (core upwelling)

214

215 A range of transient meanders and associated cyclonic eddies on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current commonly 216 occur promoting shelf edge upwelling which does not usually break the surface. The most well-known is the Natal pulse 217 which is observed on average 1.6 times a year, but this appearance ranges anywhere between 0 and 6 events a year 218 (Lutjeharms and Roberts, 1988; Ruijter et al., 1999; Brydon et al., 2005; Rouault and Penven, 2011; Beal et al., 2015; Leber 219 and Beal, 2015). These large solitary meander events do not have a discernible seasonal cycle but display considerable 220 interannual variability (Krug & Tournadre, 2012). Natal pulses are of the order of 100 km in diameter, and originate in the 221 upper reaches of the current usually due to the interaction of the core flow with adjacent anticyclonic eddies (Tsugawa and 222 Hasumi, 2010). Natal pulses propagate down the east coast of South Africa at approximately 10-20 km/day and grow in size 223 (amplitude) (upstream ~30 km, downstream ~200 km) (Lutjeharms et al., 2003), extending the full depth of the Agulhas 224 Current, i.e. ~2000 m (Lutieharms et al. 2001, 2003; Elipot and Beal (2015); Pivan et al., 2016). The passage of a Natal 225 pulse is often followed by the spawning of an Agulhas ring which moves off into the south Atlantic (Van Leeuwen et al., 226 2000; Lutieharms 2006; Elipot and Beal, 2015).

227

228 Natal pulses drive slope upwelling with an order of magnitude of 50–100 m per day (Bryden et al., 2005; Pivan et al., 2016), 229 and given their slow propagation, are associated with relatively long residence times. Their cold cyclonic cores temporarily 230 move deeper water onto the narrow continental slope along the Transkei shelf and are coincident with enhanced surface 231 chlorophyll (Figure 5), their influence on the coastal waters is perhaps greatest between Port Alfred and Algoa Bay on the 232 far eastern Agulhas Bank where they facilitate cross-shelf exchange (Jackson et al., 2012: Krug et al., 2014; Pivan et al., 233 2016). Goschen et al., (2015) observed the dynamics of six Natal pulses using *in situ* moorings, and found slope upwelling-234 induced cold bottom water events  $(10-12^{\circ}C)$  to extend over the entire shelf reaching the inshore areas of Algoa Bay. These 235 lasted 1–3 weeks during the passing of the pulse, but the cold water on the shelf could linger a further 3 weeks. During 236 upwelling, the isotherms ascended at an average rate of 1.8 m/day as the cold bottom layer increased in thickness to 40–60 237 m, although upwelled water did not break the surface in all cases. Cold water remained in the area for a further 2–3 weeks.

238

Using a combination of two ocean models (INALT01 and AGU HYCOM) Malan et al. (2018) showed that large meander events in the Agulhas Current drive strong shear with the shelf waters on the meander leading and trailing edges. This induces areas of strong negative vorticity which promotes upwelling events in the bottom boundary layer, resulting in a significant decrease in subsurface temperatures at 100 m at the shelf edge. This is particularly prevalent along the slope of

the eastern Agulhas Bank. They used a tracer experiment to directly observe the uplift of water from 400 m beneath the surface of the Agulhas Current (**Figure 6**), on the leading edge of a large meander.

245

246 Another common recurring cold-core cyclonic eddy is the Durban break-away eddy (Lutieharms and Connell, 1989; 247 Guastella and Roberts 2016). This is a semi-permanent feature of smaller proportions than the Natal pulse ( $\sim 60$  km). It is 248 considered to be lee-trapped during its early development as a result of a submerged bight off Durban in the 100 m depth 249 contour configuration. It is hypothesized that the cyclone is spun-up by the strong south-westward flowing Agulhas Current 250 offshore of the regressed shelf edge near Durban. Analysis of ADCP data and satellite imagery show the eddy to be present 251 off Durban approximately 55% of the time with an average lifespan of 8.6 days. After spin-up the eddy breaks loose from 252 its lee position and propagates downstream on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current (Figure 2). The eddy is highly 253 variable in occurrence, strength and downstream propagation speeds. There is no detectable seasonal cycle in the eddy 254 occurrence, with the Natal pulse causing more variability than any seasonal signal. Moorings and ship data confirm upward 255 doming of the thermal structure in the eddy core associated with cooler water and nutrients being moved higher in the water 256 column, stimulating primary production. Gaustella and Roberts (2016) also noted a second mechanism of upwelling by this 257 feature, viz. divergent upwelling in the northern limb of the eddy (where the cyclonic radial flow separates from the shelf). 258 Moreover, satellite-tracked surface drifters released in the eddy demonstrated the potential for nutrient-rich eddy water to 259 be transported northwards along the inshore regions of the KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Bight, thus contributing to the functioning 260 of the bight ecosystem (see Figure 6), as well as southwards along the KZN and Transkei coasts – both by the eddy migrating 261 downstream and by eddy water being recirculated into the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current itself.

262

264

# 263 2.1.2.2. Dynamic boundary upwelling

265 Historically referred to as dynamic or divergent upwelling, surface upwelling expressions (isotherm outcropping) occur west 266 of Cape Lucia (near Richards Bay) where the very narrow Maputoland shelf (3 km) widens to become the KZN Bight, and 267 near Port Alfred (27°E) further downstream where the Transkei shelf widens into the Agulhas Bank (Figure 2). Both 268 Lutjeharms et al. (2000) and Meyer et al. (2002) showed that low water temperatures of <19 °C, high salinities (c. 35.30) 269 and nitrate levels (c. 15 umol kg<sup>-1</sup>) indicated upwelling in the northern KZN Bight with an epicentre between Cape St Lucia 270 and Richards Bay (Figure 6). This is the prime source of upwelled water and nutrients for the KZN Bight. This upwelling 271 is responsible for elevated chlorophyll levels commonly observed in the northern part of the Bight (c. 1.5 mg m<sup>-3</sup>, cf. c. 0.5 272 mg m<sup>-3</sup>. Roberts and Nieuwenhuys (2016) showed upwelling events to last 5–10 days with temperatures commonly dropping 273 by 7°C. The earlier studies (Lutjeharms et al., 2000; Meyer et al., 2002) suggested this upwelling was topographically and 274 dynamically driven by the juxtaposition of the Cape St Lucia offset and the Agulhas Current (a solitary mechanism). 275 However Roberts and Nieuwenhuys (2016) showed almost all major and minor cold-water intrusions on the shelf coincided 276 with upwelling-favourable north-easterly winds that simultaneously force a south-westerly coastal current. Analysis of in

situ mooring data indicates the strongest upwelling events here are driven by a coupled mechanism of Ekman bottom veering

on the continental slope and upwelling-favourable wind.

278 279

280 Some 150 km south of Durban, the coastline again undergoes a small northward retraction from the shelf edge — which 281 begins the slowly southward expanding Transkie shelf (at Port St Johns; see Figure 2). The shelf north of here is very 282 narrow as is the case north of the KZN Bight. South of Durban (and the Durban Eddy), the Agulhas Current flows close to 283 the coast. But at Port St Johns the Current begin to move offshore following the smooth continental slope. Roberts et al., 284 (2010). using S-ADCP data and satellite SST demonstrated the existence of cyclonic flow in the Port St Johns-Waterfall 285 Bluff coastal inset, with a northward coastal current similarly ranging in velocity between 20 and 60 cm s<sup>-1</sup>. CTD data 286 indicated that this was associated with shelf-edge upwelling, with surface temperatures 2-4 °C cooler than the adjacent core 287 temperature (24–26 °C) of the Agulhas Current (Figure 7). Vertical profiles of the S–ADCP data showed that the counter 288 current, about 7 km wide, extends down the slope to at least 600 m, where it appeared to link with the deep Agulhas 289 Undercurrent at 800 m. It is not known how often this feature exists. Satellite images at times show enhanced surface 290 chlorophyll on the narrow shelf here, but often this is overtaken by passing turbulent features on the inshore boundary of 291 the current.

292

293 Surface upwelling near Port Alfred occurs on a much grander scale than the KZN Bight or Port St Johns, at times stretching 294 from East London (29°E) to Port Elizabeth (80-300 km in length Figure 4), and is considered the most important upwelling 295 on the south-east coast of South African. Lutjeharms et al. (2000) using cruise data showed the upwelled water to originate 296 from a depth of 200-300 m in the Agulhas Current resulting in water of 8-11°C moving up onto the continental shelf which 297 has an edge break at 100 m depth. This colder, nutrient-rich water is derived from the upper to middle levels of South Indian 298 Central Water and forms a thermocline which at times breaks the surface here resulting in extensive chlorophyll blooms that 299 propagate westwards well onto the Eastern Agulhas Bank (e.g. Figure 4). Lutjeharms et al. (2000) suggested that 300 topographically induced changes in the structure of the Agulhas Current underpins the mechanism for this 'dynamic' 301 upwelling. Intermittent outcropping of upwelled water occurs more than 40% of the time and changes the surface 302 temperatures dramatically (Lutjeharms et al., 2000). Moreover, Lutjeharms (2006) suggested that the cold, nutrient-rich 303 bottom layer on the eastern Agulhas Bank has its origins from upwelling in the Port Alfred region underpinning the intense 304 thermoclines found here (Swart and Largier, 1987).

305

Leber et al. (2017) found that meanders act in combination with upwelling-favorable winds to force the strongest cold events, while upwelling-favorable winds alone, possibly primed by Ekman veering, force weaker cold events. This is not unlike the situation near Cape St Lucia, where the frontal curvature of warm Agulhas Current meanders link with the atmosphere to drive local wind stress curl anomalies that reinforce upwelling. [see below]

311312

## 2.1.2.3. Wind-driven coastal upwelling

Surface coastal upwelling is also found along the south coast of South Africa (i.e. eastern and central Agulhas Bank) some far removed from the Agulhas Current which is some 200 km away off Mossel Bay. This coastal upwelling is driven by the easterly winds which tend to be dominant during the austral summer months (Walker, 1986). It has been shown that the dynamic upwelling near Port Alfred is also augmented with easterly wind driven coastal upwelling (Leber et al. 2017).

317

While upwelling is found on the westward sides of prominent capes that reach out into deeper water, the epicenter occurs further along the 100 km Tsitsikamma Coast (**Figure 4**) where the coastal bathymetry is steep (Roberts and van den Berg, 2005). A 100 km-long, thin offshore extension of this upwelling is commonly observed in satellite data during the summer months. This banana-shaped feature, known as the 'cold ridge', is associated with high levels of chlorophyll (**Figure 4**). Roberts (2005) suggested that the cold ridge is an upwelling filament drawn out by the shelf circulation, however, this hypothesis is still under investigation.

# 324 2.1.3. Productivity and ecosystem impacts

325 Satellite composite (Figure 4) of near-surface chlorophyll (chl-a) highlights the main drivers of productivity on the south 326 and east coast of South Africa — the former being warm-temperate and the latter warm ecoregions. On the Agulhas Bank, 327 the combination of wind-driven coastal upwelling and the cold ridge filament, are clearly dominant. Underlying these, and 328 not mentioned above, is also a deep chlorophyll maximum that overlay the subsurface thermocline. This very intense 329 thermocline (change of 10°C over 10 m) results from an insolation-warmed top layer and a bottom layer of cold, nutrient 330 rich, Central Indian Ocean Water. Added to this productivity is that seen on the eastern extremity of the Agulhas Bank near 331 Port Alfred (Figure 4). As indicated in Section 2.1.2.2, this productivity is not seasonally linked, but rather is divergent-332 driven by the Agulhas Current. The blooms are advected westwards onto the widening Agulhas Bank. Together these make 333 the Agulhas Bank a productive region that supports the early life stages (nursery grounds; see Hutchings et al., 2002) of 334 many of South Africa's commercial fish species — e.g. clupeoids (Roel et al., 1994), chokka squid (Augustyn et al., 1994), 335 and sparids such as shad, geelbeck, and white steenbras (Govender and Radebe, 2000; Griffiths and Hecht, 1995; Bennett, 336 1993).

337

Unlike the Agulhas Bank, the east coast has a very narrow shelf that is strongly influenced by the fast, warm, Agulhas Current. The warm waters encourage a diverse number of temperate species, often seasonally abundant. These support a diverse range of trawler, longline, commercial and recreational ski boat, charter boat, shore angling, small-scale, artisanal and subsistence fisheries. Pelagic game fish include king mackerel, tuna, bonito and dorado, with a fair number of sailfish and black, blue and striped Marlin. There are numerous shark species in these waters too. Line fish include species such as 343 shad, blacktail, stumpnose, karanteen, pompano, stonebream in the ocean with grunter, kob and perch in the numerous 344 estuaries. Along the rocky and sandy shore — crabs, mussels, red bait, oysters, winkles, octopus, and lobsters are harvested. 345 The well-known annual sardine run is a major world-wide phenomenon that also supports a small-scale, seasonal beach 346 seine fishery. Many species use the Agulhas Bank, KZN Bight and the estuaries as spawning and nursery grounds — some 347 even combinations of these.

348

349 On the east coast shelf, the only refuge from the Agulhas Current is the 100-km long KZN Bight which is important 350 (Hutchings et al., (2002) for local recruitment of species such as the commercial sparid (Chrysoblephus puniceus), otherwise 351 known as slinger, and KZN sardines. This importance is underscored by the considerable productivity that occurs in the 352 Bight due to divergent upwelling near Cape St Lucia (Figure 4), coastal wind-driven upwelling in the bight, and the Durban 353 eddy (Roberts et al., 2016; Guastella and Roberts, 2016, Roberts and Nuiwenhuis, 2016). What is not understood vet, is the 354 value of the eddy-driven productivity ecosystems, as highlighted in Section 2.1.2.1, to the east coast. This productivity is 355 along the southern KZN-Transkei shelf which is very exposed to the current, and apart from estuaries, has no obvious refuge 356 for spawning and recruitment. This is the topic of a new research project called CYCLOPS, which hypothesizes east coast 357 larvae are retained in the productively rich eddy cores.

# 358 2.2 The Mozambique Channel

## 359 2.2.1 Background

Oceanographic sampling within the Mozambique Channel was limited before the first International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE; 1959-1965), with merely six voyages and fewer than 100 stations recorded between 1913 and 1952 (Jorge da Silva et al., 1981). The Commandant Robert Giraud conducted extensive sampling throughout the Mozambique Channel during October and November 1957 as part of the International Geophysical Year (Menaché, 1963), but few of the 65 stations were located close to the coast. It seems likely that prior to the IIOE, coastal upwelling processes in this region were unknown, as the Somali upwelling system was the only upwelling area in the western Indian Ocean to be investigated during the expedition.

The first hydrographic data used to report on upwelling phenomena in the Mozambique Channel, as inferred from sloping isotherms and isohalines in the upper 500 m of the water column, were collected onboard RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen*, which surveyed the entire coast of Mozambique four times between August 1977 and June 1978 (IMR 1977a; IMR 1978a, b, c). Saetre and de Paula e Silva (1979) concluded that, during the NE monsoon (Nov-April), wind-induced upwelling occurs in a narrow strip of the ocean along the northern Mozambique coast between 11 and 16°S. Although they did not observe any associated low temperatures or high nutrient concentrations in the surface waters, they observed cyclonic eddies off Angoche in September and November 1977 and further south off Inhambane and along a transect off ~27°S during the September 1977 and January-March 1978 surveys. A special effort to investigate the upwelling in the northern section of the channel was subsequently undertaken onboard the RV *Alexander von Humboldt* in February and March 1980 to determine whether the upwelling was due mainly to wind or current effects (Nehring, 1984). Hydrographic sampling was conducted along nine transects normal to the coast between Cabo Delgado and Angoche. During this survey, dynamic topography revealed a cyclonic eddy in the Angoche region, with high NO3- and chlorophyll concentrations associated with the core of the eddy (Nehring, 1984; Nehring et al. 1987).

380 More detailed hydrographic surveys within the Delagoa Bight by the RV Dr. Fridtjof Nansen in October 1980 (Brinca et 381 al., 1981) and RV Ernst Haeckel in January 1982 (Lutieharms and Jorge da Silva, 1988) provided further information on 382 upwelling and circulation in this southernmost part of the Mozambigue coast. Lutieharms and Jorge da Silva (1988) used 383 data from all these cruises, in conjunction with satellite remote sensing SST imagery from AVHRR for the period spanning 384 1975 to 1985, to study the region in detail. Their results suggested that there is an area in the Delagoa Bight, the Inharrime 385 terrace, where upwelling enhances biological productivity over the continental shelf. A later study by Kyewalyanga et al. 386 (2007) using satellite ocean color products and a biological model corroborated this finding. Lutjeharms and Jorge da Silva 387 (1988) also suggested that a cyclonic lee eddy present in the Delagoa Bight during the 1980 and 1982 cruises was 388 topographically driven and a relatively consistent feature. Between 2004 and 2006, a series of four cruises on the RV Algoa 389 was undertaken to investigate the persistence of this lee eddy, as well as the influence of passing eddies on upwelling in the 390 Bight, as part of the African Coelacanth Ecosystem Project (ACEP), with hydrographic and biological sampling conducted 391 along a series of shore-normal transects within the Bight (Lamont et al., 2010). The lee eddy was documented only once 392 during these cruises, leading Lamont et al. (2010) to suggest that the Delagoa Bight eddy is more transient than previously 393 thought.

394 The RV Dr. Fridtjof Nansen returned to the region almost three decades later in 2007 for a comprehensive ecosystem survey 395 of the entire Mozambique coast (Johnsen et al., 2007), and again in 2009 to survey the Angoche upwelling area during the 396 Agulhas and Somali Large Marine Ecosystem (ASCLME) program (Olsen et al., 2009). These efforts complemented several 397 hydrographic surveys within the Mozambique Channel between 2002 and 2010, driven largely by a French-South African 398 partnership through the multidisciplinary MESOBIO (Influence of mesoscale dynamics on biological productivity at 399 multiple trophic levels in the Mozambique Channel) research programme (Ternon et al., 2014), which focused on the 400 mesoscale eddies. Detailed information about the Angoche and Delagoa Bight upwelling events, based on hydrographic 401 data collected during MESOBIO, has been documented by Malauene et al. (2014), Roberts et al. (2014), and Lamont et al. 402 (2014).

# 404 **2.2.2. Mechanisms**

The northern part of the Mozambique Channel is influenced by the monsoonal wind system, with wind stress predominantly from the north to north-east during austral summer and the south to southeast during austral winter (Saetre and Jorge da Silva, 1982; Schott et al., 2009). The influence of the monsoon winds in the Mozambique Channel is halted at about 20°S (Tomczak and Godfrey, 1994; Schott et al., 2009). South of this latitude, the winds are southeasterly (known as the trade winds) almost all year round and are unfavourable for Ekman upwelling along the Mozambican coast.

410 The monthly mean wind stress (vectors) and wind stress curl (shading) within the Mozambique Channel and around 411 Madagascar are shown for different seasons in Figure 8. January (Figure 8a) represents typical austral summer conditions, 412 corresponding to the boreal northeast Monsoon (NEM) regime. April (fall: Figure 8b) represents the period of the transition 413 from the NEM towards the austral southeast Monsoon (SEM), shown for July, corresponding to the austral winter season 414 (Figure 8c). October (Figure 8d) represents the reversal of the Monsoon from the SEM to the NEM. In the southern 415 hemisphere, negative and positive wind stress curl correspond to Ekman suction and pumping, respectively. Ekman suction 416 in general leads to the emergence of upward vertical velocities within the water column, resulting in upwelling (blue areas). 417 whereas Ekman pumping leads downward vertical velocities, leading to downwelling events (red areas). The strongest 418 upwelling is predicted around Madagascar, especially during July and October.

419 With over 30 cruises in the Mozambique Channel since the late 1970s, there is now a clear picture of where upwelling 420 hotspots are located along the Mozambique coast. In the northern sector, upwelling develops at Angoche, off the coast of 421 Nampula between 15°S and 18°S, around the narrows of the Channel (Figures 9 and 10). Upwelling in the southern sector 422 of the Mozambique Channel is more variable with regards to location, but several hotspot regions are evident, such as on 423 the Sofala Bank, at Ponta Zavora, around Inhambane, and at the Delagoa Bight, directly offshore from the Mozambican 424 capital Maputo. Upwelling within the Mozambique Channel, both in the northern and southern sectors, can be ascribed to 425 two dynamic forcing mechanisms, one linked to the local characteristics of the oceanic circulation, and the other linked to 426 the atmospheric wind forcing that transfers its momentum into the ocean's interior (Nehring et al., 1987; Quartly and 427 Srokosz, 2004; Malauene et al., 2014; Roberts et al., 2014).

The drivers of upwelling at Angoche in the northern Mozambique Channel were recently investigated by Malauene et al. (2014), who inferred dominance of both wind-stress and oceanic mesoscale current instabilities. Data from an in situ underwater temperature recorder (UTR) deployed near Angoche between 2002 and 2007, combined with satellite data, revealed intermittent "cool water" events between August and March, which coincides with the period of the northeast monsoon winds. During this period, the alongshore winds in the northern Mozambique Channel are southward oriented and upwelling favorable; hence they induce surface divergence in the upper water column, thereby establishing the onset of wind-driven Ekman coastal upwelling (Malauene et al., 2014). This seasonal wind-driven coastal upwelling results in
 elevated chlorophyll-a signatures over an area between 15 and 18°S (Figure 10: Malauene et al., 2014).

436 The other contribution to upwelling at Angoche has been attributed to the dynamics of anticyclonic-cyclonic eddy pair 437 interaction with the continental shelf (Malauene et al., 2014), due to the southward passage of large anticyclonic eddies and 438 rings along the western boundary of the Channel (Figure 9: de Ruijter et al., 2002; Ridderinkhof and de Ruiter, 2003; Halo 439 et al., 2014). The interaction of mesoscale eddies with the continental slope on the western side of the Mozambigue Channel 440 has been shown to cause upwelling of cooler, nutrient-rich water, resulting in elevated phytoplankton biomass in the shelf 441 regions, as described further below (Lamont et al., 2014; Roberts et al., 2014). Malauene et al. (2014) suggested that the 442 cool surface, elevated chlorophyll-a waters off Angoche are primed and formed by favourable wind-driven Ekman-type 443 coastal upwelling during August and March, but may be further enhanced in chlorophyll-a by anticyclonic/cyclonic eddy 444 pairs interacting with the shelf.

445 The interaction between mesoscale eddies and the Mozambican western boundary is intense and a frequent occurrence. This 446 interaction also causes lateral divergence of the flow-field and has been regarded as an important driver of the observed 447 upwelling events through slope current topographic-driven upwelling occurring predominantly at Ponta Zavora and Sofala 448 Bank (Roberts et al., 2014; Lamont et al., 2014). Roberts et al. (2014) used in situ observations of ocean currents measured 449 by a ship-borne Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler (S-ADCP) and hydrographic data from Conductivity Temperature Depth 450 (CTD) casts to investigate the interaction of a dipole eddy (with the cyclone to the south of the anticyclone, tracked using 451 altimetry maps of sea level anomalies) with the western continental slope of the southern Mozambigue Channel, near 452 Inhambane. They observed strong (>100 cm s<sup>-1</sup>) southward currents over the slope adjacent to the anticyclone, with 453 horizontal divergence over the shelf at the southern edge of the anticyclone, and intense slope upwelling between the dipole 454 and the shelf. Nutrient and chlorophyll concentrations were enhanced in the near-surface waters over the shelf, although 455 there was no evidence of upwelling at the surface. Data from a nearby UTR confirmed prolonged bouts of slope upwelling 456 over several weeks until the dipole had moved further south. Combined altimetry and UTR data also slowed that both 457 cyclonic and anticyclonic independent eddies (not part of a dipole) along the Mozambique continental shelf may induce 458 slope upwelling, with divergence north of the contact zone in the case of cyclonic eddies (Roberts et al., 2014). Cyclonic 459 eddies are usually associated with vertical suction in the eddy's interior, favouring upwelling of nutrient-rich deep waters 460 (i.e., new production) into the euphotic zone, particularly during the spin-up phase (Robinson, 1983; Tew-Kai and Marsac, 461 2009).

The southernmost upwelling region in the Mozambique Channel is the Delagoa Bight, centered around 26°S and 34°E (Lutjeharms and Da Silva, 1988; Lamont et al., 2010). The region is one of the largest coastal indentations in the southwest Indian Ocean, and the second richest area in terms of shrimp fisheries in the country, after the Sofala Bank. The oceanic circulation in the Bight is dominated by a semi-permanent cyclonic lee eddy (Lutjeharms and Da Silva, 1988; Cossa et al., 466 2016), which is topographically trapped and appears to occur about 25% of the time, with no clear seasonal signal (Cossa et al., 2016). The formation of the lee eddy in the Bight has been linked to the characteristics of the flow-field offshore, especially the Mozambique Channel rings. In particular, the passage of cyclonic eddies off the Inhambane region influences the water masses of the Delagoa Bight through upwelling onto the shelf, resulting in enhanced productivity (Quartly and Srokosz, 2004; Kyewalyanga et al., 2007; Lamont et al., 2010; Lamont et al., 2014). Kyewalyanga et al. (2007) recorded high chlorophyll a and primary production values in the northern part of the Delagoa Bight (Figure 10), where pelagic fish, mostly round herring (*Etrumeus teres*) have previously been recorded (Brinca et al., 1981).

## 473 2.2.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

474 In addition to stimulating primary production along the continental shelf of Mozambique, often in areas associated with 475 higher biomass or pelagic fish or shrimps, the mesoscale eddies play an important role in ecosystem dynamics in the 476 Mozambigue Channel (MC) through the stimulation of new primary production via upwelling in cyclonic eddies, as well as 477 the broad distribution of both coastal upwelling-generated and eddy-generated production. Using isotopic tracers, Kolasinski 478 et al. (2012) showed that the new production is circulated throughout the mixed layer, while some cyclonic production may 479 also be exported horizontally into the frontal region. Strong currents at the perimeters of these eddies result in the 480 entrainment and offshore advection of this high biomass, dominated by siliceous diatoms, into the frontal regions (Kolasinski 481 et al., 2012). Huggett (2014) found mesozooplankton populations were significantly enriched within the cyclonic eddies and 482 divergence areas, with a higher abundance of copepod and euphausiid nauplii observed in the cyclonic eddies compared to 483 the anticyclonic eddies. This suggests that the divergence areas are constantly "fed" by production from within the cyclonic 484 eddies. This concentration of coastal production combined with the import of cyclonic production into the boundary region 485 might explain why it is often the boundaries of eddies that are targeted by consumers in the MC. Sabarros et al. (2009) 486 documented large aggregations of micronekton (small forage organisms including crustaceans, squid, and fish) mainly in 487 areas where the local horizontal gradient of sea level anomalies is strong, i.e. at the periphery of eddies, and foraging 488 frigatebirds tend to avoid the centre of cold-core (cyclonic) eddies, preferring the eddy edges (Weimerskirch et al., 2004). 489 Mesoscale eddies are also thought to provide better conditions for tuna aggregations throughout the water column, not just 490 at the surface, and high species diversity among longline catches (tunas and swordfish) in the MC suggests the eddies may 491 function as biodiversity hotspots (Tew-Kai & Marsac, 2010). Through upwelling in the core of cyclonic eddies and offshore 492 entrainment of shelf production in the inter-eddy frontal zones, mesoscale eddies are a major source and distributor of 493 production and organic matter in an otherwise oligotrophic system, and a key driver in supporting the high biomass and 494 diversity of pelagic consumers observed in this region.

# 496 2.3 Madagascar

#### 497 **2.3.1 Background**

The island of Madagascar received little attention both before and during the IIOE. The transect made by RV *Atlantis II* in 1963, departing from Maputo at the Delagoa Bight, simply crossed the southern Madagascar coast as a pathway to Reunion and Mauritius Islands (Miller and Risebrough, 1963). No wonder not even the name Madagascar is mentioned in their description (Wallen, 1964; Fye, 1965). If a potential upwelling zone off southern Madagascar upwelling had been known of then, surely a drive to investigate it during the IIOE would have been easily motivated.

503 Even since the IIOE, relatively few large-scale hydrographic surveys have been conducted along the coastline of 504 Madagascar, which at ~48000 km is the longest in Africa. The first extensive oceanographic survey over the southern 505 continental shelf of Madagascar to provide evidence of upwelling was conducted in June 1983 onboard the RV Dr. Fridtjof 506 Nansen (IMR, 1983a: Lutieharms 2006). In the south, inshore surface temperatures in the vicinity of Cap Sainte Marie, and 507 Taolagnaro (Fort Dauphin) at the southeastern corner of the shelf, were about 2°C lower than farther offshore, with salinities 508 indicating upwelled Subtropical Surface Water originating from depths of about 200 m. Just over a quarter of a century later. 509 the first circumnavigation of this large island was achieved through two ecosystem surveys in 2008 and 2009 by the RV Dr. 510 Fridtjof Nansen during the ASCLME programme. Between 24 August and 1 October 2008, the Nansen completed 115 CTD 511 stations in total along 11 transects extending far offshore along the south and east coasts of Madagascar, ending at the 512 northern tip (Krakstad et al., 2008). Evidence was found of upwelled Subtropical Surface Water at the southeastern corner 513 of the shelf (25°S), while relatively fresher and cooler water inshore at 16°S and 14°S was suggestive of upwelling along 514 the northeast coast (Krakstad et al., 2008). One year later, from 25 August to 3 October 2009, the Nansen revisited the 515 western sector of the south coast and continued sampling along the southwestern and north-western coasts, ending once 516 more at Antsiranana (Diego Suárez) in the north, completing 10 transects and 182 hydrographic stations (Alvheim et al. 517 2009). Once again, hydrographic sampling provided evidence of coastal upwelling on the southern coast (26°S), as well as 518 at two locations on the west coast, near Cap Sainte André (16°S) and Nosy Be Island (13°S), with salinity maxima indicating 519 upwelling of Subtropical Surface Water in the south and Equatorial Surface Water in the northern region (Pripp et al., 2014).

#### 520 **2.3.2 Mechanisms**

521 Seasonal maps of wind stress curl indicate both strong upwelling and downwelling events around Madagascar are likely 522 during austral winter (July, **Figure 8c**) through to late spring (October, **Figure 8d**). In July, the strongest upwelling is 523 predicted to the northwest of Madagascar, around the Comoros basin. During this period, the winds are from the southeast. 524 In October, the strongest upwelling is predicted all around the south, southeast, and southwest coasts of Madagascar. During 525 this period, the winds are northeasterly along the southeastern coast, and southeasterly along the southwestern coast of the 526 Island, thus becoming upwelling favourable.

527 Since the first observation of upwelling off southern Madagascar, there has been considerable interest amongst the scientific 528 oceanographic community, both locally and internationally, to confirm this upwelling and understand the physical 529 mechanisms of its formation, frequency, characteristics, and spatial extension and temporal variability (Lutieharms and 530 Machu, 2000; DiMarco et al., 2000; Machu et al., 2002; Ho et al., 2004; Srokosz and Quartly, 2013; Ramanantsoa et al., 531 2018a,b; Collins, 2020). Lutjeharms and Machu (2000) used a snapshot composed satellite SST imagery from Advanced 532 High-Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) sensor onboard of NOAA satellite, with a spatial resolution of 1°x1° longitude and 533 latitude, in conjunction with chlorophyll-a concentrations retrieved by SeaWiFS satellite, and Scatterometer wind field data 534 from Ouickscat satellite, to inspect the mechanisms of formation of this upwelling. Their finding suggested that this 535 upwelling was caused by current instabilities at the inshore edge of the South East Madagascar Current, as no correlation 536 was found with the local winds (Lutieharms and Machu, 2000). In a parallel study using SST and wind field data from the 537 same sources, DiMarco et al. (2000) concluded that upwelling over the southern continental shelf and along the southeastern 538 continental slope, which extended over an area of 2° longitude by 1° latitude (nearly 24,642 km<sup>2</sup>) during February and 539 March (North-East Monsoon), was driven by both wind forcing and current interactions with the continental shelf and slope. 540 However, the paucity of in situ wind and current data prevented them from quantifying the relative contribution of each 541 process.

542 Machu and colleagues revisited the topic soon thereafter, and surveyed the southern and southeastern continental shelf of 543 Madagascar on board the Dutch RV Pelagia, during the second phase of the Agulhas Current Source Experiment (ACSEX-544 2) project in March 2001. Hydrographic measurements conducted along three transects provided the first dedicated and 545 comprehensive hydrographic evidence of the upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current (EMC). The 546 combination of this dataset and satellite imagery led the authors to conclude that the southeastern Madagascar upwelling 547 occurs through a combination of favourable wind stress in the area, enabling an Ekman wind-driven mechanism, and the 548 dynamics of a cyclonic eddy generated inshore of the current, favoured by the concave-shaped bathymetry as the shelf 549 widens (Machu et al., 2002).

An attempt to study the long-term inter-annual variability of the upwelling events to the south and off southeastern Madagascar and their interaction with the EMC was conducted by Ho et al. (2004). Their analysis of monthly SeaWiFs chlorophyll-a imagery spanning from September 1997 to November 2001 revealed that the upwelling was generally enhanced in austral winter and austral summer each year. They also concluded that the southern and southeastern upwelling boundary cells interact, based on the movement and deformation of the boundary between them, with a mechanism that can be explained by the shear wave propagation theory (Ho et al., 2004). 556 More recently, Ramanantsoa et al. (2018a) investigated the temporal and spatial variability of the coastal upwelling south 557 of Madagascar. Using a suite of satellite remote sensing data, in-situ observations, and numerical model simulations, they 558 provide new insight on the structure, variability, and drivers of this upwelling. Their results suggest that the southern and 559 southeastern upwelling cells already indicated in former studies (Figure 9: Ho et al., 2004), which they termed core 2 and 560 core 1 respectively, are characterized by distinct seasonal variability, have different intensities and water mass origins, and 561 are formed by different physical mechanisms (Ramanantsoa et al., 2018a). The core in the southeastern sector is attributed 562 to dynamical upwelling in response to the detachment of the EMC from the continental slope, reinforced by favorable winds. 563 The southern core, situated to the west of the southern tip of Madagascar (Cap Ste Marie), is primarily attributed to Ekman-564 driven upwelling by favourable winds, whilst being inhibited by the recently described warm poleward current along the 565 eastern boundary of the Mozambique Channel, the Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current, or SMACC (Ramanantsoa et 566 al., 2018b).

567 During the *Nansen* survey in 2009, Pripp et al. (2014) observed upwelling off Cap Ste Andre and Nosy Be along the 568 northwest coast, with elevated sea surface salinities indicative of upwelled Equatorial Surface Water. They suggested this 569 upwelling was most likely current-driven due to strong northeastward bottom currents associated with passing anticyclonic 570 eddies, which would have resulted in onshore bottom Ekman transport.

## 571 2.3.3. Productivity and ecosystem impacts

572 As with other upwelling regions, the upwelling areas on the Madagascar shelf are associated with elevated biological 573 productivity (Figure 10). During the 2009 survey, Pripp et al. (2014) found all upwelling cells to be associated with 574 relatively high surface chlorophyll and satellite-derived net primary production (NPP), as well as higher acoustic estimates 575 of pelagic fish, elevated pelagic and demersal trawl catches, and greater whale sightings. Ockhuis et al. (2017) found the 576 highest neuston biovolume on the Madagascan shelf to be associated with relatively cool water (<22 °C) in the core 577 upwelling areas, and Ramanantsoa et al. (2018a) describe the coastal upwelling area south of Madagascar as a hotspot of 578 marine biological productivity. As has been observed for the Mozambigue coast, the interaction of eddies with the 579 continental shelf can lead to the export of this shelf-based, upwelling-derived production into the open ocean. A young 580 cyclonic eddy that formed off southern Madagascar in 2013 was observed to entrain chlorophyll-rich shelf water around its 581 perimeter (Barlow et al., 2017), with the associated entrapment of plankton having implications for the dispersal and 582 recruitment of larval stages and biological connectivity between regions (Braby, 2014; Noyon et al., 2019).

583 The southeast core of current-driven upwelling has been proposed (Longhurst 2001; Lévy et al., 2007; Raj et al., 2010; 584 Srokosz & Quartly, 2013) to be the main driver of the South-East Madagascar Bloom, an extensive 585 phytoplankton/cyanobacteria bloom that has been shown by satellite imagery to occur to the southeast of Madagascar during

- 586 late austral summer). However, analysis of a 19-year time series of ocean color satellite data by Dilmahamod et al. (2019)
- 587 laid this as well as other theories to rest. Bloom occurrence was associated with La Niña conditions when upwelling intensity
- 588 south of Madagascar was reduced due to a stronger than average Southeast Madagascar Current detaching from the coast.
- 589 The resultant feeding of low-salinity water into the Madagascar Basin and enhanced stratification, along with ample light,
- 590 are suggested as ideal conditions for a nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterial bloom onset (Dilmahamod et al., 2019).

#### 591 2.4 East African Coastal Current system

# 592 **2.4.1. Background**

593 The equatorward-flowing East African Coastal Current (EACC) is present along the coasts of Tanzania and Kenva 594 between 11°S and 3°S (Figure 11, 12a-b). Transporting about 19.9 Sv, as estimated by Swallow et al. (1991), the EACC 595 draws much of its water from the westward-flowing South Equatorial Current. Even though it experiences the impact of 596 the seasonally reversing winds, the northeast monsoon in austral summer (NEM, November to March) and southwest 597 monsoon in austral winter (SW M, April to October, but note the prevailing winds are from the southeast in the 598 southern hemisphere, see Figure 8, and regional papers refer to the southeast monsoon, or SEM) the EACC is northward-599 oriented all year round. This is in contrast to the Somali Current located in its downstream bounds, which reverses its 600 southward - northward orientation in synchrony with the reversal of the monsoons (Wyrtki, 1973; Schott, 1983; Tomczak 601 and Godfrey, 1994). Downwelling is prevalent throughout the year, particularly during the SWM when the coastal current 602 is strongest, but irregular upwelling has been observed near the northern Kenyan coast during the NEM when the EACC 603 moves away from the coast in the region of the confluence with the southward-flowing Somali Current (Heip et al., 1995; 604 Jacobs et al., 2020).

605 Although upwelling off the East African coast was first documented by Newell (1959), later confirmed by Iversen et al. 606 (1984), Bakun et al. (1998), and Roberts et al. (2008), it is only recently that the importance of these coastal upwelling cells 607 have been given deserved consideration through various regional research initiatives, such as the Productivity of the East 608 African Coastal Current (PEACC) project, the Sustainable Oceans, Livelihoods and food Security Through Increased 609 Capacity in Ecosystem research in the Western Indian Ocean (SOLSTICE-WIO) programme (www.solstice-wio.org), and 610 the Western Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (WIOURI) flagship programme of the IIOE-2, due to their potential 611 to sustain food security to local coastal communities (Roberts, 2015). The dynamics of the overlying atmospheric wind 612 forcing (Varela et al., 2015) and the progression of the EACC through the chain of small scale islands (from south to north 613 - Mafia, Zanzibar and Pemba) along the coast of Tanzania (Roberts et al., 2008), combined with the varying local bottom 614 topography characterized by the presence of shallow banks along the coast of Kenya, have been identified as potential 615 drivers of upwelling events in the region (Roberts et al., 2008; Roberts 2015; Jacobs et al., 2020).

#### 616 2.4.2 Mechanisms

617 The southern continental shelf off Kenya is very narrow (0-3 km wide), but in the northern sector the shelf widens to 618 approximately 45 km due to the presence of the North Kenya Banks (NKBs; Nguli 1995; Jacobs et al. 2020). Upwelling 619 events along the Kenvan coast are thought to be driven primarily by the northeast monsoonal winds that favor Ekman-driven 620 coastal upwelling and increased productivity during November - April (Heip et al., 1995; Varela et al., 2015). However, 621 recent findings based on outputs from a high-resolution global biogeochemical model and satellite remote sensing 622 observations along the Kenyan coast suggest that, during the NEM, the Ekman wind-driven coastal upwelling is further 623 enhanced in the NKBs by a secondary dynamical process, topographically induced shelf-break upwelling, (Jacobs et al., 624 2020). This shelf-break upwelling showed high levels of spatial and intensity variability at interannual timescales, related 625 to the confluence position between the EACC and the Somali Current (Figure 11a). The model indicated that shelf-edge 626 upwelling and productivity were enhanced over the NKBs when the confluence was located further south.

627 Along the coast of Tanzania, both the NEM winds and shear instabilities between the EACC and the chain of islands along 628 the coast have been attributed as responsible physical mechanisms driving upwelling in the region, as suggested by a 629 modeling study by Halo et al. (2020). Roberts (2015) suggested elevated chlorophyll-a concentrations in the lee 630 (downstream) of Zanzibar Island, in particular, and to a lesser extent off Pemba Island, measured during a survey in 2007, 631 were a consequence of localized upwelling induced by an island wake (Roberts, 2015). A ROMS model constructed by 632 Zavala-Garay et al. (2015) also shows cool temperatures in the Zanzibar Channel during the NEM, potentially caused by 633 wind-induced upwelling north of Zanzibar Channel, followed by advection into the Zanzibar Channel. A small but intense 634 upwelling cell also develops around Tanga, between Pemba Island and the Tanzanian coast. This small upwelling cell has 635 been observed in both monsoons (Figure 11), suggesting it is a regular occurrence (Halo et al., 2020).

## 636 2.4.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

637 The modeling study by Jacobs et al. (2020) found that upwelling of cold, nutrient-rich water along the Kenyan coast during 638 the NEM results in elevated chlorophyll, primary production, and phytoplankton biomass (Figure 12c, e). This was 639 particularly enhanced over the NKBs and likely to contribute to higher fishery potential in this area, which has been 640 traditionally low along the Kenyan coast. Interannual variability in wind strength during the NEM is likely to be an important 641 factor controlling upwelling intensity and subsequent phytoplankton production in the region (Painter, 2020). However, a 642 recent study by Varela et al. (2015) documented a long-term decline in coastal upwelling off Kenya during the NEM for 643 1982-2010, which suggests that upwelling-related productivity may decline in the long-term if this trend continues. In 644 contrast, analysis of weather station data for the period 1977-2006 generally showed long-term increases in winds along the 645 coast of Tanzania, although the trends in mean and maximum wind speed varied with latitude and season (Mahongo et al.,

- 646 2012). Long-term trends were stronger during the SWM than during the NEM, with increased wind speeds for Tanga and
- 647 Zanzibar in the north, but a decline in maximum wind speed for Mtwara in the south, and constant maximum wind speeds
- 648 for Dar es Salaam. A coastal upwelling index (CUI) based on SST output from a coupled biophysical climatological model
- by Halo et al. (2020) showed a moderate and steady linear increase in upwelling for Tanga over a 23-year period (1990-
- 650 2013), in line with the regional increase in wind speed observed by Mahongo et al. (2012).
- 651 The limited biogeochemical data for the EACC region were recently reviewed by Painter (2020), who noted that the warm 652 surface waters are permanently N-limited, with low NO3-:PO43-, conditions that favor the nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterium 653 Trichodesmium, Trichodesmium colonies are generally more abundant during the NEM off both Kenya and Tanzania 654 (Kromkamp et al., 1997; Lugomela et al., 2002), but this is unlikely to be related to upwelled nutrients, and more likely due 655 to wind-borne aeolian dust and land-based nutrient input during the rains, as well as the warmer, more stable conditions that 656 prevail during the NEM compared to the SWM. Sampling in Kenyan waters aboard RV Tyro in 1992, Kromkamp et al. 657 (1997) measured higher rates of primary production during the NEM than during the SWM, with maximum rates of 6 g C 658 m<sup>-2</sup>d<sup>-1</sup>. Zooplankton biomass was also higher during the NEM, with maximum values of 18.6 mg C m<sup>-3</sup> (Mwaluma, 1995).

# 659 2.5 Coast of Somalia

#### 660 2.5.1 Background

661 Coastal currents off Somalia exhibit a strong seasonal cycle forced primarily by the seasonally reversing monsoon winds. 662 During winter, alongshore currents are equatorward. During summer, they are poleward and exhibit one of the strongest 663 coastal upwelling in the North Indian Ocean. In early May, as the Intertropical-Convergence-Zone moves north of the 664 equator, the northward East African Coastal Current crosses the equator and extends till about 3-4°N along the Somali coast 665 and then recirculates to form the Southern Gyre (SG) (Duing et al., 1980). A portion of SG meanders eastward and the rest 666 flows southward to cross the equator offshore (Chatterjee et al., 2013). During this process, a cold upwelling wedge forms 667 along its western and northern front. As the monsoon progresses, currents north of the SG turn very complex. By June, the 668 southwesterly winds (Findlater Jet; Findlater, 1969) strengthen along the coast resulting in a strong alongshore current all 669 along the Somali coast extending up to a depth of 1000 m and the offshore Ekman transport induced by strong alongshore 670 winds cause a strong upwelling off the coast of Somalia. By July/August, currents along the Somali coast strengthen rapidly 671 to reach up to 250-300 cm/s with transport reaching up to 37 Sv (Fischer et al., 1996; Beal and Donohue, 2013) and thus 672 form the strongest boundary current of the north Indian Ocean. In the process, another gyre forms towards the offshore side 673 of the northern part of the Somali coast between ~5-9°N, known as Great Whirl (GW) (Leetmaa et al., 1982). This time, a 674 second cold-wedge forms along the northern flank of the GW north of ~9°N, where SST falls below 20°C. The summer 675 monsoon upwelling off the coast of Somalia also drives one of the most productive zones of the north Indian Ocean. As the 676 southwesterly alongshore winds strengthen, Ekman transport pushes the coastal surface water offshore, leading to cold 677 subsurface water to upwell and then advect away offshore by the strong SG and GW fronts. This upwelled water brings a 678 bounteous amount of nutrients to the euphotic zone (more than 15  $\mu$ M), which results in enhanced phytoplankton 679 concentration in the upper surface layer (Smith and Codispoti, 1980; Hitchcock and Olson, 1992; McCreary et al., 1996a, 680 Wiggert et al., 2005).

#### 681 **2.5.2 Mechanisms**

682 The first modern description of hydrography and circulation across the Somali coast was provided during cruise based 683 observations between August-September of 1964 (Warren, 1966; Swallow and Bruce, 1966) under the first International 684 Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE); a series of cross-shore hydrographic sections were carried out between 3°S-12°N. They 685 observed upwelled cold surface temperature (reaching up to 12.8°C) north of 7°N, and these cold waters spread offshore as 686 cold tongues along the northern flank of the GW reaching up to 55°E. Later, an extensive survey of the Somali basin and 687 the western Indian Ocean was carried out in the summer of 1979 using a multi-ship observation campaign known as the 688 Indian Ocean Experiment (INDEX) under the framework of the Indian Ocean Panel of SCOR. Based on samples collected 689 during INDEX, two separate zones of upwelling were identified: one in the south at  $\sim$ 3-4°N associated with SG and the 690 another in the northern part of the coast north at  $\sim 9^{\circ}$ N linked to the fronts associated to GW with a minimum SST of  $\sim 17^{\circ}$ C 691 (Leetmaa et al., 1982, Quadfasel and Schott, 1982). By the late 90s' the availability of the remotely sensed satellite 692 observations provided an opportunity to observe long term SST variability along this coast and is being used widely for 693 understanding the seasonal variability and climatic trend of coastal upwelling of this region (Goes et al., 2005; Wiggert et 694 al., 2005; Prakash and Ramesh, 2007; Beal and Donohue, 2013).

695

696 Strong currents and double gyres off the Somali coast have attracted modelling studies to understand the mechanisms of the 697 observed phenomena in the 1970s to late 1990s. The pioneering works by Lighthill (1969) and Cox (1979) were the first 698 modeling studies on the strong Somali currents during the summer monsoon. Lighthill (1969) showed that, as the westward 699 propagating planetary waves excited by the offshore negative wind stress curl reflect along the continental boundary off 700 Somalia, they generate short-wavelength Rossby waves that superpose to form the boundary currents. Thereafter, several 701 papers studied the various aspects of this current system and mainly focused on the dynamical mechanisms of the alongshore 702 currents, the generation and decay of the two gyre circulations off the Somalia coast, the impact of the slanted boundary in 703 the propagation of these gyres (Anderson and Moore, 1979; Cox, 1979; McCreary and Kundu; 1988; Luther and O'Brien, 704 1989; McCreary et al., 1993) and the impact of internal instabilities (Wirth et al., 2002; Jochum and Murtugudde, 2005; 705 Chatteriee et al., 2013). In a recent study using a coupled ocean general circulation model, Chatteriee et al. (2019) showed 706 that the upwelling off Somalia is limited to the early phase of the summer monsoon when the low-level Findlater Jet sets in

across the Arabian Sea (Figure 13). As the Monsoon progresses, Ekman pumping induced by offshore negative wind stress curl deepens the thermocline in the interior Arabian Sea. Subsequently, these downwelling signals propagate westward to interfere with the upwelling signals off Somalia. As a response, the thermocline along the major part of the Somalia coast (~60%) deepens by about 40-60 m, particularly in the central part of the Somali coast. Moreover, strong alongshore winds and weaker stratification allow more mixing in the bottom of the mixed layer, which further deepens the thermocline and cools the surface mixed layer. As a result, during the peak summer months, upwelling becomes limited primarily to the eddy dominated frontal flows in the northern and to some extent in the southern part of the coast.

#### 714 2.5.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

715 Observations collected during INDEX experiment indicate that the surface NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> concentration along the cold wedge of the 716 GW front can reach up to ~15-20 µmole/liter in the summer monsoon (Smith and Codispoti, 1980). This enhanced nutrients 717 level increases productivity significantly to more than 300 g C m<sup>-2</sup> yr<sup>-1</sup> (Heileman and Scott, 2008). It was also observed 718 that, in the middle part of the coast between  $\sim$ 5-8°N, the surface concentration of the NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is relatively much lower, with 719 maximum concentration reaching up to 1.8 µmole/liter even during the peak monsoon (July/August) (Smith and Codispoti, 720 1980). Due to the large concentration of nutrients in the upper euphotic zone, primarily in the northern part, the 721 phytoplankton communities are mostly dominated by large phytoplankton (diatoms) in the upwelled waters of the western 722 Arabian Sea during the summer monsoon (Brown et al., 1999; Shalapyonok et al., 2001; Wiggert et al., 2005). Veldhuis et 723 al. (1997) also reported strong upwelling with surface temperature no more than 20°C and dominance of diatoms between 724 7-11°N along the Somali coast in July 1992.

725

726 There are relatively much less modeling studies on the observed intense productivity in response to the upwelling. McCreary 727 et al. (1996a) demonstrated the first reasonable simulation of the annual variability of the surface chlorophyll bloom of the 728 Arabian Sea based on a simple 2<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> layer model coupled with an NPZD biological module. He showed that the phytoplankton 729 blooms in the northern and central Arabian Sea during summer monsoon is primarily driven by the lateral advection of 730 upwelled nutrients off the Somalia and Oman coasts and local entrainment. However, it was noted that the model 731 underestimates the lateral advection as it does not resolve the mesoscale features like filaments that transport nutrients 732 offshore in the real ocean. Later, Kawamiya (2001) studied extensively the role of this offshore advected nutrients from the 733 coastal upwelling region in the open ocean of the Arabian Sea and concluded that Somali upwelling is the primary source 734 of nutrient supply into the southcentral Arabian Sea and the Oman upwelling water supplies nutrient in the northern Arabian 735 Sea.

737 Despite the large abundance of nutrients in the upwelling wedges off Somalia, the concentration of chlorophyll does not 738 grow exponentially. Smith and Codispoti (1980) suggest that the zooplankton grazing is the primary factor that limits the 739 phytoplankton from growing exponentially. A few studies suggest that the swift Somali Current spreads these upwelled 740 nutrients over a large part of the interior Arabian Sea and thus enhances the productivity offshore (Keen et al., 1997; 741 Hitchcock et al., 2000; Prasanna Kumar et al., 2001; Kawamiya, 2001). Coupled physical-biogeochemical models were also 742 used to identify the most limiting factors that suppress the exponential growth of the phytoplankton in this region. McCreary 743 et al. (1996a) showed that nutrients and not the zooplankton grazing primarily limit phytoplankton growth in the upwelling 744 region. However, as they used a very simple 4 component NPZD model, it was not clear, which are the limiting nutrients 745 that control the phytoplankton growth. On the other hand, studies with the help of more complex models, in the last couple 746 of decades, suggest that phytoplankton growth in this region are prone to iron limitation (Wiggert et al., 2006; Wiggert and 747 Murtugudde, 2007) and also likely to be silicate stressed (Kone' et al., 2009; Resplandy et al., 2011). This is in agreement 748 with the conclusions based on observations of the upwelled water off the Oman coast which suggested that dissolved iron 749 is one of the stressed micro-nutrient in this region and thus makes it an iron-limited High Nutrient Low Chlorophyll (HNLC) 750 zone during the summer monsoon (Naqvi et al., 2010). Recently, Lakshmi et al. (2020) studied various limiting factors and 751 distribution of phytoplankton along the coast of Somalia using a high-resolution physical-biogeochemical coupled model 752 (Figure 13). They showed that high values of chlorophyll concentration are limited to the northern flank of the GW north 753 of 9°N and exhibit moderate or low concentration in the south. The strong boundary currents advect the upwelled nutrients 754 from the southern region to the northern part of the coast and thereby accumulate the advected nutrients. In contrast, the 755 deepening of the thermocline and horizontal advection keep chlorophyll concentration low to the south of 9°N. They further 756 noted that dissolved iron concentration ( $\sim$ 1.2-1.8 nM) and the NO<sub>3</sub>:Fe ratio (<15000) do not indicate iron-deficient 757 conditions throughout the coast but suggests NO<sub>3</sub> limited growth of phytoplankton communities south of 9°N.

# 758 2.6 Coast of Arabia

# 759 2.6.1 Background

Unlike the Somali coast, upwelling along Arabia (the coast of Yemen and Oman) is more uniform and exhibits classical upwelling dynamics primarily driven by southwesterly alongshore winds during the summer monsoon. In the 1990s' the repeated multiple alongshore/cross-shore ship-based transacts under the US Joint Global Ocean Flux Study (US JGOFS), and the availability of the satellite observations of SLA, SST, and Chl-a led to a significant advancement in the understanding of the coastal current system and its associated upwelling dynamics of this region. A detailed review based on these observations is presented in Schott and McCreary (2001) and Hood et al. (2017). Here we briefly highlight some of these results and review recent advances in our understanding of this upwelling system.

768 The first estimate of the intensity of upwelling along this coast was given by Smith and Bottero (1977) using hydrographic 769 observations and winds observed during 1963 under the first IIOE campaign. They estimated a vertical velocity of the order 770 of  $2 \times 10^{-5}$  m/s with an upwelling transport of ~8 Sv through the 50 m depth along the 1000 km long coastline and from 771 the coast to 400 km offshore. Observations from the JGOFS cruises suggest that the upwelling signature on SST persists to 772 about 120 km offshore, whereas in the subsurface, upsloping of thermocline can be evident to about 260 km (Shi et al., 773 2000). They found that, during the summer of 1995, the lowest SST recorded was 21°C close to the southern part of the 774 Oman coast in late August to early September, which upwelled from a depth approximately 100-150 m. However, note that 775 the coolest temperature is observed on the shelf of Oman, where SST starts to fall immediately with the onset of alongshore 776 winds and falls below 20°C in early July.

#### 777 **2.6.2 Mechanisms**

767

778 The alongshore wind off the coast of Arabia is much weaker than that off the Somali coast but significant enough to cause 779 coastal upwelling as early as May (Kindle et al., 2002), much before the full development of southwest monsoon. The 780 upwelling strengthens as the magnitude of the alongshore winds become stronger with the progression of the summer 781 monsoon. During the late summer (August/September), SST close to the coast decreases by about 5°C from the ambient 782 offshore temperature to fall below 23°C (Shi et al., 2000). SST gradually increases away from the coast indicating that the 783 upwelling predominantly happens near the coast than offshore, where positive wind stress curl favors open ocean upwelling. 784 McCreary et al. (1996a) further noted that in the open ocean, offshore of the coast of Oman, their model-simulated vertical 785 velocity at the bottom of the mixed layer remains very small despite a large upwelling favorable Ekman pumping velocity. 786 This negligible vertical velocity is attributed to the state of Sverdrup balance via the radiation of Rossby waves. Therefore, 787 they advocated that the open ocean cooling off Oman and the associated biological response is primarily driven by advection 788 of cold nutrient-rich upwelled water from Oman coast and the wind-driven mixing entrainment at the bottom of the mixed 789 layer, which deepens the thermocline offshore.

790

During this season, owing to the offshore Ekman transport driven by the alongshore winds, sea level also drops by more than 30 cm along the coast. This is the time, owing to the crosshore sea level gradient, a northeastward coastal current, Oman Coastal Current (OCC; Shi et al., 2000) develops which persists throughout the summer monsoon (Cutler and Swallow, 1984). Interestingly, the maximum strength of the alongshore winds does not coincide with the minimum SST and sea level: while the alongshore wind reaches its peak in mid-June, the SST and sea level attain their minimum about one and a half month later by the end of August or early September (Manghnani et al., 1998; Vic et al., 2017). The reason for this delay is not very clear. However, Vic et al. (2017) indicated that remotely forced Rossby waves generated due to offshore

- Ekman pumping by the upwelling favorable wind stress curl (Smith and Bottero, 1977) north of the Findlater Jet (Findlater,
- 1969) axis drive this delay by modulating coastal stratification of the Arabian peninsula.

#### 800 2.6.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

801 This intense upwelling all along the coast of Yemen and Oman in the western Arabian Sea also drives one of the strongest 802 primary productivity of this region. These waters are enriched with macronutrients (the near-surface NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> recorded up to 803 15-20 µM (Smith and Codispoti, 1980; Morrison et al., 1998), which triggers large phytoplankton blooms; these upwelled 804 waters transport quickly to the offshore due to strong Ekman flow and advection induced by strong offshore flows as 805 filaments along the coast of Oman (McCreary et al., 1996a; Wiggert et al., 2005). This leads to the extent of upwelling 806 induced fertilization and the high phytoplankton bloom to a distance exceeding  $\sim 1000$  km offshore (Naqvi et al., 2003, 807 2006). This intense phytoplankton bloom close to the coast causes high primary productivity at a rate of more than 2.5 gCm<sup>-</sup> 808 <sup>2</sup>dav<sup>-1</sup> (Marra et al., 1998; Morrison et al., 1998). Notably, unlike the Somali coast, here chlorophyll concentration is more 809 uniform all along the coast. Further, observations during summer monsoon indicate that the shelf off Oman is net autotrophic 810 (Sarma, 2004) and exhibit moderately low surface pH (<7.9) (Takahashi et al., 2014).

811

812 Observations of the coastally upwelled water off Oman during US JGOFS indicates iron stress with N:Fe ratio ranging 813 between 20,000-30,000 during the early phase of the summer monsoon. Later, this Fe limitation was also confirmed based 814 on in-situ observations off the Oman shelf by Moffett et al. (2007) and Naqvi et al. (2010). Naqvi et al. (2010) further argued 815 that this iron limitation fuelled a shift in the phytoplankton communities from diatoms to smaller phytoplankton species 816 which favours vertical export to the offshore deep ocean via lateral advection by the offshore currents (McCrearv et al. 817 2013). In contrast, Rixen et al. (2006), based on sediment transport observations, suggested that intense grazing in the 818 silicon-rich near-shore upwelled water limits the diatom bloom off Oman coast. Further, coupled physical-biogeochemical 819 ocean model studies, suggest that iron (Wiggert et al., 2006 and Wiggert and Murtugudde, 2007) and silicate (Końe et al., 820 2009) are the most limiting nutrients that inhibit the growth of diatoms off the coast of Arabia.

821

The Indian Ocean, particularly the western Arabian Sea, is experiencing rapid warming over the last few decades. An estimate of the upper 300m water column of the western Arabian Sea (Oman region) show warming of  $\sim 1.5^{\circ}$ C from 1960 to 2008; it lost dissolved oxygen by  $\sim 1 \text{ ml L}^{-1}$  (at 100m) and became near anoxic with oxycline shoaled at  $\sim 19 \text{ m}$  per decade during this period (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015). While it was hypothesized that the upper ocean warming reduces ocean mixing and biological production in the western Arabian Sea (Roxy et al., 2016), it was quickly refuted as a northward shift in monsoon low-level jet can orient the wind angle to the Oman coast in such a way that the net upwelling increases and so the primary production (Praveen et al., 2016). Moreover, the loss of snow cover over the Himalayan-Tibetan plateau owing 829 to global warming causing a shift from diatom dominated phytoplankton community to the Noctiluca scintillans in the

- 830 northwestern Arabian Sea via weakening of convective mixing during winter monsoon (Goes et al., 2020).
- 831

Most of our understanding about the coastal upwelling off Oman is based on observations and modeling studies carried out in 90s' and early 2000. Unfortunately, the lack of observations and concerted modeling effort resulted in sluggish progress of our understanding in the last couple of decades for this region. The dynamical reasons for the development of offshore eddies and their impact on the coastal upwelling, coastal currents, SST, air-sea interactions, and finally, over the biology is still not clear. Thus, considering the importance of this region in regional physical and ecological processes and, most importantly its influence on the Indian Monsoon, a focused effort is needed from the scientific community for a complete understanding of oceanic processes of this coastal upwelling system.

#### 839 2.7 West Coast of India

The signatures of upwelling along the west coast of India begin to appear during March, peak during June, and weaken by September. The upwelling is more intense along the southwest coast of India than that along the northwest coast. For the remaining months, the sea level anomaly is positive, and the thermocline is deeper, indicating conditions unfavourable for upwelling. A major consequence of west coast upwelling is the formation of anoxia that has a significant impact on the benthic ecosystem on the continental shelf (Banse 1959; Naqvi, 1991). Although the upwelling along the west coast of India is weaker than that along the coast of Somalia, the region accounts for 70% of the Arabian Sea fish production (Luis and Kawamura 2004).

#### 847 **2.7.1 Background**

848 The earliest temperature observations along the west coast were collected by trading vessels along major shipping routes 849 that were compiled into several atlases generated by different countries (Anonymous 1944, 1952). Though there were 850 inconsistencies among the atlases, they showed the presence of cold water off the southwest coast of India from June to 851 October (Banse, 1959). The decrease in temperature during the summer monsoon was also evident in sea surface 852 temperature (SST) data shown by Sewell (1929) along the southwest coast of India and Lakshadweep. It was difficult to 853 attribute this decrease in temperature to upwelling as the SST could also be controlled by other factors like atmospheric 854 fluxes, horizontal advection, or mixing. Sewel (1929) showed that SST increased during April-May when the boreal summer 855 is at its peak and dropped during June-July when the monsoon picks up. After the Monsoon, the temperature picked up again 856 and dropped during the boreal winter when the winds were cooler. Sewell (1929) linked the double oscillation of SST to 857 air temperature change.

858 The first evidence for upwelling along the west coast of India was presented by Sastry and Myrland (1959); they showed 859 that the isotherms tilted upwards all along the southwest coast of India. Both Sastry and Myrland (1959) and Banse (1959) 860 argued that the upwelling along the southwest coast of India is not completely driven by monsoon winds because the fall in 861 SST occurred in April-May, which is a month before the onset of the summer monsoon. They hypothesized that the 862 prevailing current-system caused the upward tilting of isotherms. The reversal in the West India Coastal Current (WICC) 863 appeared to coincide with the beginning of upwelling at the southern tip of India. Banse (1959) suggested that after the onset 864 of Monsoon, the winds could intermittently push the cold water to the surface. Banse (1959) further noted that the poorly 865 aerated bottom water on the shelf during the summer monsoon was linked to upwelling that takes place along the coast.

866 Hydrographic sections in the decades that followed showed that the upwelling signatures extended all along the west coast 867 of India and Pakistan (Banse 1968; Sarma, 1968; Ramamirtham and Rao, 1973) and revealed that upwelling sets in earlier 868 in the south and progresses slowly towards the north (Sharma, 1968; Longhurst and Wooster, 1990). Due to the boisterous 869 nature of monsoon winds, upwelling along the west coast of India was still considered to be driven by alongshore winds 870 (Ramamirtham and Rao, 1973). The role of wind in driving the upwelling was disputed again by Sharma (1978). Using the 871 available wind data from the atlases, he showed that the wind was onshore and poleward and not favorable for upwelling 872 during the summer monsoon. Notwithstanding, recent wind data sets show that the alongshore winds are not poleward but 873 equatorward (but weak) during the summer monsoon.

Johannessen et al. (1981) used an extensive data set (consisting of 1500 Nansen casts collected from 1971-1975) and confirmed the upwelling features highlighted in previous studies. The seasonal upwelling was found to repeat every year, albeit with a certain amount of variability. Upwelling signatures were not evident in salinity but in temperature and oxygen data. The upwelling process also increased phytoplankton and zooplankton production. However, no such correlation was evident for the higher trophic level of the food chain. The calculated rate of upwelling was around 1.5 m/day, which was consistent with the earlier observations.

The "wind-driven upwelling" hypothesis was again invoked in the mid-eighties. Shetye et al. (1985) found that offshore Ekman transport, though weak, peaked during the summer monsoon. Using ship-based observations, Shetye et al. (1990) confirmed that the upwelling intensity weakened from south to north. The width of the surface current, which is related to the upwelling, extended about 150 km from the coast. The signatures of upwelling were evident only in the top 100 m below which there were signatures of downwelling, indicative of an undercurrent. They refuted the "current-induced upwelling" hypothesis using regression analysis between Ekman transport and temperature gradient.

886 Numerical models have provided considerable insight into the seasonal cycle of north Indian Ocean circulation (McCreary 887 et al., 1993; Shankar et al., 1996; McCreary et al., 1996b; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Shankar and Shetye 1997). Using

889 by coastal-trapped waves generated by remote winds from the Bay of Bengal (see section 2.7.3 for details). The wind-890 driven upwelling was weaker than that caused by the propagation of these waves. The dominance of these waves suggests 891 that upwelling indices based on Ekman theory (Pankajakshan et al., 1997; Bakun et al., 1998) do not provide a complete 892 picture of coastal upwelling along the west coast of India. The weak alongshore winds, however, would still contribute to 893 upwelling and cannot be neglected (Shankar et al., 2002; Suresh et al., 2013). Unlike the west coast of India, the southern 894 tip of India is unique in the sense that the Findlater jet is parallel to the coast and causes strong Ekman Transport (Bakun et 895 al., 1998; Smitha et al. 2008). The wind-induced coastal upwelling index here was almost five times that along the southwest 896 coast of India and the strong upwelling near the southern tip could generate coastal-trapped waves that could propagate 897 along the west coast of India (Bakun et al., 1998).

#### 898 2.7.2 Observations

899 The double oscillation, as observed by Sewell (1929) is evident in the SST climatology (Figure 14a, 15a). The temperature 900 peaks during April and is highest along the southwest coast of India. The area surrounding the southwest coast of India. 901 where the temperature remains above 30°C, is often referred to as the Arabian Sea mini warm pool, and this region plays an 902 essential role in the onset of the summer monsoon (Vinavachandran and Shetve, 1991; Rao and Sivakumar, 1999; Shenoi 903 et al., 2005; Kurian and Vinayachandran, 2007; Vinayachandran et al., 2007). The increase in temperature is attributed to 904 air-sea fluxes and is independent of the SST changes observed during the winter monsoon. The temperature begins to drop 905 after April and is the lowest during July and August. The drop in temperature starts in the south and progresses northwards 906 within a month. The progression of SST towards the north, also observed in hydrography data (Sarma, 1968; Longhurst 907 and Wooster, 1990), could be linked to the poleward propagation of coastal Kelvin waves. A typical first or second 908 baroclinic mode Kelvin wave would cover the entire west coast of India within 7-21 days (these waves are sometimes too 909 fast to be detected by a satellite over a small domain).

910 Along the southwest coast of India, the isotherms tilt upwards by April (Figure 14b-c). By June, the cooler water starts 911 touching the surface, and the upwelling intensifies by July and August. The isotherms start lowering by September-October, 912 and surface waters become warmer. In the north, the surface layers are cooler during April, and the downwelling of 913 isotherms persists till June. The isotherms begin to rise by July-August, but they are very weak compared to the southwest 914 coast of India. Unlike the SST, the depth of 26°C isotherm shows an annual cycle; it decreases during summer and increases 915 during winter. The lag associated with poleward propagation of the Kelvin wave is also evident in the isotherm depth (See 916 Figure 7 in Shah et al., 2015 and Figure 6 in Shankar et al., 2019). The larger width of the upwelling region in the south is 917 also indicative of Rossby waves, whose westward phase speed decreases with latitude. The westward drift of chlorophyll 918 along with Rossby waves is evident in the satellite data but is not as prominent as seen during the winter monsoon (Amol, 919 2018; Amol et al., 2020).

920 Since wind is the primary driving factor for upwelling around the world, it is essential to look at its behaviour along the 921 west coast of India. Although the monsoon winds are strong (Figure 15d.e), they mainly blow perpendicular to the coast. 922 The alongshore component of the wind is weak and equatorward all-round the year. The winds peak during July along the 923 entire west coast and this increase in the magnitude of the alongshore wind intensifies the upwelling during the summer 924 monsoon. It is only at the southern tip of India that the alongshore winds reverse with the season. Upwelling indices show 925 that it is weaker along the west coast of India, compared to Somalia, Oman, Tanzania, and south Madagascar but is 926 equivalent to that in Mozambique and west Madagascar (Bakun et al., 1998). As the alongshore winds are weak compared 927 to the cross-shore, there is also an ambiguity in the direction of the wind reported by previous authors (Sarma, 1978; Shetye 928 et al., 1985; Shah et al., 2015). For example, Shah et al., (2015) showed that the alongshore winds were equatorward during 929 the summer monsoon, but only south of 17°N. The difference here lies in the angle of rotation applied to compute the 930 alongshore component of wind. Shah et al. (2015) used coastline angle, which is almost parallel to the longitude in the 931 north. The wind vectors in Figure 15 are pointing northeast, which would lead to a poleward wind when rotated based on 932 coastline angle. The slope angle, which is used to compute the alongshore wind in Figure 15, is different from the coastline 933 angle because of the widening of the continental shelf north of 15°N (see 1000 m contour in Figure 15a).

934 Unlike the unidirectional alongshore wind, WICC and the sea level anomaly show a strong seasonal cycle (Figure 15b.f). 935 The current (sea level anomaly) is equatorward (low) during summer and poleward (high) during winter. The reversal in 936 current follows the drop in sea level, and the flow is poleward in March, much before the monsoon onset. The early reversal 937 of current is evident in direct current measurements (Amol et al., 2014; Chaudhuri et al., 2020). Unlike the sea level, the 938 currents, particularly along the southwest coast of India, have a significantly larger intraseasonal component (Vialard et al., 939 2009a; Amol et al., 2014; Chaudhuri et al., 2020). The current could flow in either direction during a particular time of a 940 year, and the frequent intraseasonal bursts would further make it difficult to predict its direction. Still, it was the early 941 reversal of current during March that prompted Banse (1959) to discard wind as the driving factor for upwelling.

942 In response to the raising of the isotherms, chlorophyll also increases from April onwards (Figure 15c). The chlorophyll 943 concentration is highest along the southwest coast of India and peaks during July-August. During this time, the wind is at 944 its maximum and the sea level and the SST are at their minimum. The increase in chlorophyll concentration is weakest along 945 the central west coast of India and only extends over a few months. In the north, the chlorophyll is high all around the year 946 because of the winter convective mixing that follows the upwelling in the summer.

#### 947 **2.7.3 Mechanisms**

948 McCreary et al. (1993) used a series of reduced-gravity model experiments to show that the upwelling along the west coast 949 was driven by remote forcing. They concluded that winds in the Bay of Bengal and the equator caused upwelling along the 950 west coast of India. The local winds, however, enhanced upwelling, but their contribution was weaker than that by remote 951 winds. They noted that the driving mechanism for upwelling was the generation of coastal Kelvin waves by winds along 952 the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal. These winds generated upwelling Kelvin waves that propagated equatorward 953 (with the coast on the right) along the east coast of India, turned around Sri Lanka, and propagated poleward along the west 954 coast of India. The poleward propagation explained why the upwelling is delayed in the north. Shankar and Shetve (1997) 955 further highlighted the mechanism for the early onset of upwelling using an analytical model. They showed that the 956 upwelling along the west coast of India and the Lakshadweep low formed in the southeastern Arabian Sea resulted from 957 poleward propagation of Kelvin waves and westward radiation of Rossby waves, which supported the results shown by 958 McCreary et al. (1993). Modeling studies for upwelling using ocean general circulation models are very few. Simulations 959 by Haugen et al. (2002) were consistent with the observations shown by Johannessen et al. (1981). Lévy et al. (2007) showed 960 that the onset of summer blooms in the southeastern Arabian Sea occurred during March and was primarily driven by 961 upwelling; the horizontal currents had a limited role in driving the blooms. Koné et al. (2013) arrived at the same conclusions 962 using a biophysical model. They further showed high values of NO3- that were associated with the vertical advection in this 963 region.

Differences in the strength of upwelling between north and south could affect the nature of fisheries along the coast of India (Shankar et al., 2019). In the south, stronger upwelling permits the growth of larger phytoplankton owing to a greater supply of nutrients, whereas in the north, phytoplankton tends to be smaller in size owing to weaker upwelling. The large phytoplankton is directly fed by planktivorous fishes that are not common in the north.

968 In summary, model simulations show that the upwelling is primarily driven by poleward propagation of coastal Kelvin 969 waves. The linear wave theory explains the early onset of upwelling and the progression of upwelling from south to north. 970 The alongshore winds also favour upwelling and could contribute significantly to its variability along the coast. A detailed 971 analysis using observations and numerical models would be required to delineate the relative contribution of the wind and 972 large-scale waves during the peak of the summer monsoon.

# 973 2.7.4 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

Unlike most parts of the world ocean, the biophysical provinces of the Indian Ocean vary seasonally (Rixen et al., 2020;
Lévy et al., 2007). This is because during both monsoons, the underlying mechanisms for nutrient intrusion that support
elevated primary productivity are different during summer and winter. During summer, there is strong coastal upwelling,
while cooler and dry air from the northern Indian subcontinent drives convective mixing in the eastern Arabian Sea during
winter (Madhupratap et al., 1996; Vijith et al., 2016).

979 A fascinating feature of the ecosystem along the west coast of India is the seasonal occurrence of two phytoplankton

980 blooms of different phyla. First, there are winter-mixing driven blooms of Noctiluca scintillans (hereafter Noctiluca), a

981 mixotrophic dinoflagellate that occur during winter in the northern Arabian Sea (Prakash et al., 2008; Gomes et al., 2008;

982 Rixen et al., 2020). Second, during March-May, there are massive cyanobacterial blooms of *Trichodesmium* (N<sub>2</sub> fixers) in

983 the central – eastern Arabian Sea (Capone et al., 1998; Gandhi et al., 2011; Kumar et al., 2017).

The occurrence of *Noctiluca* blooms was first discovered in the early part of this century and seemed to have displaced the previously occurring diatom blooms in this region (Gomes et al., 2008; Sarma et al., 2018). These blooms create a biogeochemical divide – making the northern Arabian Sea more productive than its southern part (Prakash et al., 2008). These massive outbreaks of *Noctiluca* blooms were reported to be fuelled by an unprecedented influx of oxygen-deficient waters into the euphotic zone (Gomes et al., 2014). Prakash et al. (2017) refuted this claim and proved that they are naturally driven by changes in nutrient stoichiometry (Lotliker et al., 2018; Sarma et al., 2018).

990 Once nutrients supply driven by the winter mixing is consumed and the ocean begins to stratify, *Trichodesmium* blooms 991 start to appear by early spring in the central Arabian Sea (Capone et al., 1998; Mulholland and Capone, 2009). These become 992 so massive in the eastern Arabian Sea that they fix up to 34 mmol N m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup>, which is the highest reported rate of N<sub>2</sub> fixation 993 ever among the world oceans (Gandhi et al., 2011; Kumar et al., 2017). In fact, when similar conditions prevail during fall 994 intermonsoon immediately after the summer monsoon upwelling, the N<sub>2</sub> fixation rate makes a surplus contribution to the 995 nitrogen-nutrients to fuel primary production in the eastern Arabian Sea (Singh et al., 2019).

996  $N_2$  fixers are associated with excess phosphate (compared to  $NO_3^-$  if normalized as per the Redfield Ratio) concentration 997 (Deutsch et al., 2007). Summer upwelling of oxygen-deficient waters along the shelf break is the major process regulating 998 the biogeochemistry on the west coast (Gupta et al., 2016). Summer upwelling, which drives high primary production, is 999 followed by the occurrence of denitrification (a nitrogen loss process) at subsurface layers in the eastern Arabian Sea which 000 would make these layers phosphate-rich. Hence, in this cycling, the upwelling would intrude phosphate-rich water to the 001 sea surface (Sudheesh et al., 2016). The notion is that once parts of upwelled nutrients are utilized by autotrophs in the sunlit 002 layers, it will create a niche for N<sub>2</sub> fixers. However, recent studies suggest that N<sub>2</sub> fixers can also occur in eutrophic 003 conditions (Landolfi et al., 2015).

The progression of upwelling over the eastern Arabian Sea is slow, and the upwelled waters sustain for about 9 months over the shelf (Gupta et al., 2016); i.e., a wider shelf over the eastern Arabian Sea allows the upwelled waters to persist long enough till its little oxygen content is completely utilized and seasonally cover the entire shelf (area ~200,000 km<sup>2</sup>), making it the largest shallow water oxygen-deficient zone in the world (Naqvi et al., 2000). The intensely oxygen-depleted environment favours the development of diverse microbial populations that utilize anaerobic pathways to derive energy, mediating elemental transformations that are of immense geochemical significance (Wright et al., 2012). Denitrification is

- 010 one of the classical examples for this kind, which makes the eastern Arabian Sea upwelling system one of the 'hot spots' of
- 1011 N<sub>2</sub>O production in the world ocean with N<sub>2</sub>O saturations up to 8250% (Naqvi et al., 2005). Moreover, these upwelling
- 1012 regions are also characterized by a high production of other climate-relevant trace gases such as CH<sub>4</sub> and dimethyl sulfide
- (Nagvi et al., 2010; Shenov et al., 2012). Further, spring *Trichodesmium* blooms seem to be responsible for the emission of
- 1014 volatile organic compounds, such as isoprene a precursor of ozone formation in the troposphere, in the eastern Arabian
- 1015 Sea (Tripathi et al., 2020a,b). The upwelling biogeochemistry of this seasonal oxygen-deficient zone also significantly
- 1016 impacts the cycling of several other micronutrients, like manganese, iron, etc. (Breitburg et al., 2018).
- 017 The variability in magnitude and intensity of upwelling and the characteristics of upwelled waters play a major role in 018 shaping biogeochemistry of the eastern Arabian Sea shelf that designates it as a 'Hotspot' for greenhouse gas production 019 during the summer monsoon. The upwelled waters are hypoxic in the south and suboxic in the central-eastern Arabian Sea 020 (Gupta et al., 2016, Sudheesh et al., 2016), as the latter are sourced from the core oxygen minimum zone (OMZ with <10 021 uM of oxygewen) and former from outside of it (Gupta et al., 2021). Such spatial variation in degree of deoxygenation of 022 upwelled waters is regulated by the intra-seasonal shift of cold-core eddy from south to central regions, which result in 023 upliftment of oxycline from outside core OMZ in the south to within core OMZ in the centre (Gupta et al., 2021). This 024 change in oxygen regime in upwelling source waters from hypoxia to suboxia combines with strong thermohaline circulation 025 leading to high oxygen demand over the central shelf, relative to the south (Gupta et al., 2021), making the central shelf 026 extremely oxygen-depleted and sulphidic with H<sub>2</sub>S levels goes up to  $\sim 15$  µM in the nearshore waters (Nagyi et al., 2006, 027 2009). While the hypoxic upwelling over the southern shelf restricts the denitrification to sediment, the anoxic/sulphidic 028 conditions over the central shelf extend its occurrence to the water column as well (Sudheesh et al., 2016). Being limited 029 with very few studies on carbon dynamics over both east and west coasts, the temporal evolution of coastal acidification 030 is still not clear, although Kanuri et al. (2017) reported  $pCO_2$  up to 630  $\mu$ atm along the southeastern Arabian Sea shelf and 031 even levels exceeding 1000 µatm are common during peak upwelling (Sudheesh, 2018). Refuting the charges levied by 032 huge productions of CO<sub>2</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>O, massive methane loss through anaerobic oxidation by sulphate in the nearshore waters 033 of the eastern Arabian Sea during late summer monsoon upwelling (Sudheesh et al., 2020) is a great relief to the environment 034 as the potential greenhouse effect is naturally diluted by converting methane to  $CO_2$  (the latter is almost 300 times less 035 potential compared to former).
- On comparable lines of intensification of oxygen deficiency in the western Arabian Sea (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015), eastern Arabian Sea shelf was also earlier reported with such intensification (Naqvi et al., 2000, 2006), but the comparison of monthly studies for one year in 2012 with similar data set from July 1958 to January 1960 (Banse, 1959) revealed remarkably little change in oxygen concentrations (Gupta et al., 2016; **Figure 16**) with inter-annual variations between the years supported by global climatic events such as IOD, ENSO, etc., as these warm years impact upwelling intensity and prevents the anoxia formation on the shelf (Parvathy et al., 2017).

042 The productivity of the western Arabian Sea has earlier been shown to increase over the years (Goes et al., 2005) due to the 043 warming of the Eurasian landmass, but such a trend was not discernible over the eastern Arabian Sea (Prakash and Ramesh, 044 2007) as neither wind speeds nor SSTs could show any significant change. Although no information available on such recent 045 trends, the dissolved oxygen concentrations of recent years were comparable with that of five decades ago over the southwest 046 coast of India (Gupta et al., 2016) despite the period gaining significant developmental activities on the hinterland co-047 occurred with a steep rise in Arabian Sea warming. In the absence of climatology data, the maintained dissolved oxygen 048 levels can be considered as a proxy to show the sustained upwelling intensity and biogeochemistry of this region. Further, 049 the upwelling intensity and consequent biological production over its eastern part are several-fold less than the western 050 region. Yet, the famous and thickest Arabian Sea OMZ is closer towards the eastern side, underlying the importance of 051 circulation in OMZ formation and source water characteristics for upwelling induced primary production. Though the 052 upwelling over both east and west coasts is progressed from south to north during the summer monsoon, the coast of Somalia 053 is pronounced with significant gradients in biological production – several folds high in the north during the advanced phase 054 of summer monsoon when nutrients from local upwelling as well as advected from south support enhanced growth of 055 phytoplankton (Lakshmi et al., 2020). In contrast, the productivity of eastern upwelling is higher in the south due to relatively 056 intense upwelling compared to its north (Gupta et al., 2016; Shankar et al., 2019). Though upwelling over the west coast is 057 much intense, it never experienced strong oxygen-depleted conditions, unlike its east coast. The strong biological pump 058 (Ekman transport) operating from the west coast transports organic matter too far off distances beyond the central Arabian 059 Sea and pushes the OMZ towards the east (Naqvi et al., 2003, 2006). Being closer, these OMZ waters feed the eastern 060 Arabian Sea upwelling and develop hypoxic/anoxic conditions there (Gupta et al., 2016, 2021; Sudheesh et al., 2016). The 061 upper 300m water column of the western Arabian Sea (Oman region) has witnessed warming by ~1.5 °C from 1960 to 2008; 062 it lost dissolved oxygen by  $\sim 1$  ml L<sup>-1</sup> (at 100m) and became near anoxic with oxycline shoaled at  $\sim 19$  m per decade during 063 this period (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015). While it was hypothesized that the upper ocean warming reduces ocean mixing 064 and biological production in the western Arabian Sea (Roxy et al., 2016), it was quickly refuted as a northward shift in 1065 monsoon low-level jet can orient the wind angle to the Oman coast in such a way that the net upwelling increases and so the 066 primary production (Praveen et al., 2016). In the scenarios of such increasing upwelling and shoaling of oxycline, if more 1067 deoxygenated/near anoxic waters upwell, it may turn the future of the west coast comparable to the present-day east coast 068 in terms of biogeochemistry under seasonal hypoxia/anoxia.

The impact of upwelling on oxygen concentration has a profound socio-economic impact too as it directly affects living resources and biodiversity (Panikkar and Jayaraman, 1966; Naqvi et al., 2006). Though the available information from the Arabian Sea is scanty, the mesopelagic fish populations appear to be impacted by a reduction in suitable habitat as respiratory stress increases due to deoxygenation (Naqvi et al., 2006). Benthic ecosystems along the eastern Arabian Sea are affected worst owing to the unusually large area of continental margins being exposed to hypoxic/anoxic waters (Helly and Levi, 2004). During this period, the density and diversity of larger benthic fauna (prawns, crabs, mollusks, etc.) become 1075 insignificant, and groups that are sensitive to hypoxia, like echinoderms, are either absent or least abundant (Parameswaran et al., 2018). However, macro-infaunal communities are overwhelmingly dominated by deposit-feeding opportunistic polychaetes, particularly the proliferation of juveniles (Abdul Jaleel et al., 2015). The upwelling region of the Arabian Sea is a major ground for fishery potential in terms of their eggs laying and recruitment succession. The upwelling induced high primary production supports higher trophic level productivity but with less biodiversity. It is found that upwelling intensity and coastal currents during summer monsoon are highly influencing fish eggs transport, their recruitment success rate, and juveniles transport.

#### 1082 **2.8** South Coast of Sri Lanka

083 The upwelling off the southern coast of Sri Lanka (which is slightly tilted towards the north in the east) begins with the 084 onset of the SWM, during the last week of May or during the first of June, and continues through October. The coastal 085 upwelling here is primarily caused by summer monsoon winds, which have a strong alongshore component along the 086 southern coast of Sri Lanka (Vinavachandran et al., 2004). The SMC that flows eastward to the south of Sri Lanka and 1087 northeastward to the east of Sri Lanka (Vinayachandran et al., 1999, 2018; Webber et al., 2018; Rath et al., 2019) influences 088 the advection of cold upwelled water. During the early part of the SWM, some advection of cooler water occurs towards the 089 south, away from the coast. During the later half, most of the upwelled water flows into the BoB along with the SMC 090 (Vinavachandran et al., 2004: Das et al., 2018: Vinavachandran et al., 2020). Numerical simulations have successfully 091 reproduced the upwelling along the southern coast of Sri Lanka (Vos et al., 2014).

092

093 Satellite-derived chlorophyll data (Figure 17) during the summer monsoon clearly shows that the coastal upwelling has a 094 clear expression on the ecosystem (Vinayachandran et al., 2004; Vinayachandran 2009). The chlorophyll concentration is 095 high near the coast in response to upwelling. In addition, the advection by SMC spreads water from near the coast towards 096 the east of Sri Lanka, impacting a larger region. In situ sampling to quantify the physical and biological impacts of upwelling 1097 around Sri Lanka is yet to take place. The physical impact on the ecosystem in this upwelling zone is complex, owing to the 098 simultaneous influence of multiple factors. The upwelled water advects to the southern coast of Sri Lanka from the southern 099 tip of India and the Gulf of Mannar. There is additional advection along the path of the SMC. Finally, the currents along the 100 east coast of Sri Lanka is southward during summer, being the eastern arm of the cyclonic gyre, associated with Sri Lanka 101 Dome (SLD, Vinayachandran and Yamagata, 1998). There are indications from model simulations that the pCO2 102 distribution is impacted by the combined influence of upwelling and advection (Chakraborty et al., 2018). On the whole, 103 satellite-derived SST and chlorophyll data clearly show an active upwelling zone along the southern coast of Sri Lanka, 104 which draws out a definite response from the ecosystem and biogeochemistry.
106 Using shipboard observations, Jyothibabu et al. (2015) suggested that capping of the upper layer by low salinity water in 107 this region can restrict the chlorophyll concentration in the near-surface layers. Using the glider data set, Thushara et al. 108 (2019) has provided in situ observational evidence for the chlorophyll blooms associated with SLD. The observed bloom 109 followed a period of Ekman suction caused by cyclonic wind stress curl, and the decay was caused by the arrival of Rossby 110 waves from the east. Model simulations (Thushara et al., 2019) support these processes and suggest that the Ekman pumping 1111 is capable of enriching the euphotic zone with nutrients, but there is a lack of corresponding in situ observations that are 112 much needed to validate these processes. Roy et al. (2021) have reported that this regions has the potential for occasional 1113 ventilation and act as a source for atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>.

#### 1114 **2.9. East Coast of India**

## **1115 2.9.1 Background**

1116 Circulation in the Bay of Bengal (BoB) is driven by a rather intricate combination of local winds over the BoB and remote 1117 forcing originating from the equatorial Indian Ocean. During the southwest monsoon, strong southwesterly winds along the 1118 western boundary of the BoB (WBoB) makes conditions favourable for coastal upwelling (Shetve et al., 1991; Shankar et 119 al., 1996; McCreary et al., 1996b; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Shankar et al., 2002; Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016). 120 The winds are northeasterly during the northeast monsoon, which is favourable to coastal downwelling (Shetye et al., 1996). 121 BoB is also known for high SST (average temperature greater than 28 C) (Vinayachandran and Shetye, 1991; Shenoi et al., 122 2002) and the formation of several low-pressure systems (Sikka 1980; Gadgil et al., 2004). A significant amount of 123 freshwater influx from major river sources like Ganga, Brahmputra, etc., plays a dominant role in stratifying the upper layer 124 affecting the strength and intensity of coastal upwelling (Vinayachandran et al., 2002; Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016; 125 Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016, Amol et al., 2019). Additionally, coastal processes in the WBoB are influenced by 126 complex bathymetry, shallow mixed layer, the formation of mesoscale eddies, and propagations of large-scale planetary 127 waves (Mukherjee et al., 2017). Detailed description of the East India Coastal Current (EICC) and its variability, based on 128 moored observations, are given in Mukherjee et al. (2014) and Mukhopadhyay et al. (2020).

129

# **130 2.9.2 Observations**

The first evidence of coastal upwelling along western Bay of Bengal (WBoB) was observed between 1952–1965, during IIOE. The first published report, although insufficient to present evidence of coastal upwelling or downwelling for a season, along WBoB using hydrographic data, was by La Fond (1954, 1957, 1958, 1959). Evidence of coastal upwelling during summer monsoon along the east coast of India was reported by Varadachari (1961). Murty and Varadachari (1968) found stronger upwelling at Visakhapatnam compared to Chennai during both spring and summer. Similarly, upwelling at the 136 northern part of the east coast of India (Figure 18) was also reported by several investigators (Murty, 1958; Murthy, 1981; 137 Gopalakrishna and Sastry, 1984: Rao et al., 1986). Upwelling along the east coast of India have been described using 138 hydrographic measurements (Shetye et al., 1991, 1993, 1996; Sanilkumar et al., 1997; Babu et al., 2003), Lagrangian 139 drifters (Shenoi et al., 1999), satellite observed sea level (Shankar et al., 2002, Durand et al. 2009), current meter moorings 140 (Mukheriee et al. 2014; Mukhopadhyay et al., 2020) and high frequency HF Radar (Mukhopadhyay et al., 2017). The 141 vertical extent of coastal upwelling can extend upto  $\sim 70$  m (Shetye et al., 1991). During summer, both hydrography and 142 moored observed current shows evidence of downwelling below upwelling along east coast of India (Shetye et al., 1991; 143 Mukheriee et al., 2014: Francis et al., 2020).

144

Mesoscale eddies (both upwelling (cyclonic) and downwelling (anticyclonic) favourable) play a significant role in causing coastal upwelling/downwelling in the BoB (Chen et al., 2012; Nuncio and Kumar, 2012; Cheng et al., 2013; Mukherjee et al., 2019). However, the vertical structure of mesoscale eddies along WBoB is still unknown due to the lack of appropriate in-situ measurements. As cyclonic eddies upwell cold water from its lower base to upper depth and enhance vertical mixing (Falkowski et al., 1991; Kumar et al., 2004), and vertical structure of eddies affect the strength of upwelling and associated transport of heat, salt, and nutrients in the ocean (Chaigneau et al., 2011; Dong et al., 2014), it is required to understand the role of eddies in the upwelling along the east coast of India.

#### **152 2.9.3: Mechanisms**

153 Model simulations that began in the 1990s to investigate EICC found local wind-driven coastal upwelling along WBoB 154 during the summer season compared to spring and northeast monsoon (McCreary et al., 1996b; Shankar et al., 1996; 155 Vinayachandran et al., 1996). During spring, seasonal sea level variability along WBoB is dominated by remote forcing that 156 originate from interior Ekman pumping in the BoB, the equatorial Indian Ocean, and alongshore wind along the eastern and 157 northern boundary of the BoB (McCreary et al., 1996b; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Aparna et al., 2012; Mukherejee et al., 158 2017). During the winter, seasonal coastal downwelling occurred due to the northeasterly winds (McCreary et al., 1996b; 159 Shetve et al., 1996). Based on satellite and in-situ observations and models. Shankar et al. (2002) showed that the dynamics 160 of sea level and associated upwelling along WBoB at seasonal time scales could be explained using linear theory.

- 161
- At interannual time scales, dynamics of sea level and associated upwelling are dominated by El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD) (Saji et al., 1999). During ENSO and IOD events, interannual variability of sea level is influenced by remotely propagating waves from the equatorial Indian Ocean (Clarke and Liu, 1994; Rao et al., 2009; Aparna et al., 2012; Mukherejee and Kalita, 2019). At intraseasonal time scales, coastal upwelling or downwelling is dominated by mesoscale eddies formed due to instability of the ocean (Nuncio and Kumar, 2012; Chen et al., 2012; Cheng
- et al., 2013; Mukherejee et al., 2017).

169 Recent studies also showed that Andaman and Nicobar Islands (ANIs) play a dominant role in the dynamics of sea level and 170 associated upwelling along WBoB (Chatterjee et al., 2017; Mukherjee et al., 2019) by influencing the wave propagation. 171 While propagating in the interior BoB, the Rossby wave is significantly modified in the presence of ANIs (Chatteriee et al., 172 2017) and generates coastal upwelling by the formation of mesoscale eddies in the WBoB (Mukheriee et al., 2019). Another 173 significant force for modifying coastal upwelling comes from freshwater discharge by rivers (Behara and Vinayachandran, 174 2016). Owing to the presence of fresh river water, barrier layer formation is common in the northern Bay of Bengal 175 (Vinavachandran et al., 2002), which has the potential to weaken upwelling (Behara and Vinavachandran, 2016). However, 176 the impact of river runoff inhibits upwelling only towards the end of the summer monsoon (Figure 19), and the local winds 177 sustain upwelling for most of the summer monsoon (Thushara and Vinavachandran, 2016) 178

179 In summary, coastal upwelling along WBoB is not simply local wind-driven but affected by several oceanic processes, 180 which includes mesoscale eddies, remote forcing from equatorial Indian Ocean & interior BoB, freshwater forcing from 181 rivers, etc. At the seasonal time scale, coastal upwelling along WBoB is dominated by linear processes either by local wind 182 or remotely propagating waves. At interannual time scales, sea level variability along WBoB is dominated by remotely 183 propagating waves from the equatorial Indian Ocean. At intraseasonal time scales, mesoscale eddies dominate sea level 184 variability. More in-situ observations are necessary in order to understand the vertical structure of coastal upwelling at 185 intraseasonal, seasonal, and interannual time scales. Additionally, ocean models need to be better parameterized for 186 resolving vertical processes near the coast related to mixed layer, thermocline, barrier layer, vertical stratification, etc, based 187 on in-situ observations.

#### 188 2.9.4 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

189 Despite being situated at similar latitudes and experiencing similar monsoonal forcing, the Bay of Bengal is a low productive 190 basin compared to the Arabian Sea. The large influx of freshwater leads to the formation of the salinity-driven "barrier 191 layer," (Vinayachandran et al., 2002, George et al., 2019) which restricts entrainment of nutrients into the upper sunlit layer. 192 The inorganic nutrient (nitrate and phosphate) transport through rivers draining into the bay is also abysmal (Sengupta et 193 al., 1981; Sengupta and Nagyi 1984). The salinity driven stratification is so strong that monsoonal winds are unable to erode 194 them and inject nutrients from the subsurface layer. The surface chlorophyll concentration is therefore, always low in the 195 Bay of Bengal. However, the basin is characterised by the perennial presence of sub-chlorophyll maximum (SCM), which 196 is located at 40-90 m depth (Prasanna Kumar et al., 2007; Thushara et al., 2019). Cyclonic old-core eddies, which are 197 predominantly present in the Bay of Bengal, do pump nutrients into the upper layer and can enhance the productivity by 198 more than two-fold (Prasanna Kumar et al., 2007; Singh et al., 2015). Anticyclonic eddies, on the other hand, recharge the 199 subsurface layer with dissolved oxygen and restrict the strengthening of the OMZ. Episodic atmospheric disturbances such

- as depressions and cyclones also erode the stratification by churning up the ocean and inject nutrients into the upper sunlit laver to fuel productivity (Gomes et al., 2000; Vinavachandran and Mathew 2003; Sarma et al., 2013; Vidva et al., 2017).
- 202

Though weak, the upwelling in the Bay of Bengal does drive regimes of high productivity in the southwestern region during the Southwest monsoon (Vinayachandran et al., 2004) and in the northeastern region during the northeast monsoon (Vinayachandran, 2009). The nitracline, usually situated at a depth of ~75 m, below the stratified layer, shoals upward by poleward flowing EICC during the pre-southwest monsoon and enhances productivity (Gomes et al., 2000). Additionally, high productivity was found due to eddies along the coast during the pre-monsoon. During the post-monsoon, although the wind-driven upwelling and river discharge increased the column chlorophyll concentration by nearly five-fold, the productivity decreased to half (Gomes et al., 2000) due to light limitation.

210

211 Vinavachandran et al. (2005) made the first attempt to use a four-component ecosystem model coupled with a general 212 circulation model to simulate the evolution of phytoplankton bloom in the bay during the northeast monsoon. The 213 biogeochemical simulation successfully captured the bloom evolution supported not only by the entrainment of nutrients 214 but also through upward transport of significant amounts of chlorophyll from the sub-surface layer. It highlights the 215 contribution of deep chlorophyll maxima in the observed surface bloom. Thushara and Vinayachandran (2016) later studied 216 the evolution of phytoplankton bloom in the northwestern bay during the summer monsoon. Their chlorophyll simulations 217 could successfully capture the seasonal distribution of biomass, including the coastal blooms at major river discharge 218 mouths, and were in good agreement with the satellite-derived chlorophyll data. The bloom intensity, however, is more 219 realistic in the east of Sri Lanka and also in parts of the Andaman Sea. At other places, models tend to underestimate the 220 chlorophyll values in comparison with the satellite chlorophyll. Thushara and Vinayachandran (2016) argued that the 221 negative bias might be due to overestimation in the satellite-derived chlorophyll. Their biogeochemical simulations showed 222 that as the river plumes were pushed away due to coastal upwelling, they did not change the biological production in model 223 simulations. Surface winds appear to have significant control over governing bloom in the southwestern bay during the 224 summer monsoon. Chakraborty et al. (2018), investigated the CO2 dynamics of the Sri Lanka dome region, which 225 experiences intense upwelling during the southwest monsoon and showed that biological processes in the upwelling region 226 contribute towards draw-down of the pCO2. Their simulations indicated that biological processes dominate over the physical 227 upwelling in terms of the CO2 outgassing and lead to a net decrease (~11uatm) of pCO2. Shallower nitracline in the region 228 pumps more nutrients into the upper layer and fuels biological production that compensates for the CO2 outgassing. In fact, 229 the region becomes a sink for CO2 despite having significant upwelling.

- 230
- 231
- 232
- 233

# **235 2.10 Sumatra and Java**

#### 236 **2.10.1 Background**

237 The upwelling off the southern coasts of Sumatra and Java Islands is a remarkable and unique eastern boundary upwelling 238 system (EBUS) in the Indian Ocean. The major EBUS in the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans are considered as the ocean 239 component of an interacting system among the ocean, atmosphere, and land, and its existence and development are typically 240 associated with drier conditions in atmosphere and on land (e.g. Chavez and Messie, 2009; Garcon et al., 2019). Compared 241 with these major EBUS in the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, however, the upwelling system in the Sumatra-Java coast 242 develops under wetter atmospheric condition and forced mainly by monsoon variability modulated by other climate 243 phenomena, such as ENSO and IOD. Despite its important roles in climate and ecosystem dynamics, the upwelling system 244 in the Sumatra-Java coast had been overlooked until recently. This is because the average magnitude of the upwelling signals 245 is smaller compared to the other major EBUS in the world, due partly to a strong seasonality associated with monsoonal 246 wind forcing and partly to the existence of the Indonesian throughflow to the east and south of the upwelling region (Qu et 247 al., 1994; Du et al., 2005). In addition, insufficient availability of in-situ data and complex geometry near the Indonesian 248 Seas make detailed investigations difficult.

249

The Sumatra-Java upwelling region is embedded in rather complex upper-layer circulations in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean between Indonesia and Australia (Fig.1). Seasonally changing South Java Coastal Current is associated with the monsoonal wind reversal and is directly linked with the upwelling system (Quadfasel and Cresswell, 1992; Sprintall et al., 1999). The westward flowing South Equatorial Current, a part of which is fed by the Indonesian throughflow from the Indonesian Archipelago, is located to the south of the upwelling region (e.g. Qu and Meyers, 2005a). Since the Sumatra-Java upwelling region sits close to the equator (from the equatorial region down to around 9°S), the equatorial and coastal wave guide affects variability in upwelling signatures significantly.

257

## 258 **2.10.2 Mechanisms**

A major feature of the upwelling in this region is the seasonal variation associated with the monsoonal wind along the coasts; the upwelling favorable southeasterly winds prevail during boreal summer while the northwesterly winds appear during boreal winter which generate downwelling conditions. Wyrtki (1962) was the first to demonstrate that the Ekman upwelling

262 along the coast of Sumatra and Java occurs during the boreal summer associated with the local southeasterly monsoon over 263 the region. Upwelling signatures in this region are well observed in in-situ measurements and satellite remote sensing 264 observations as in the other upwelling regions; e.g., cooler SST and subsurface temperature, shallower thermocline depth 265 and lower sea surface height, and higher chlorophyll and nutrients concentrations compared to the surrounding area (e.g. 266 Wyrtki, 1962; Susanto et al., 2001; Susanto and Marra, 2005; Iskandar et al., 2017) (Figure 20). The upwelling signatures 267 propagate to the west in association with the westward movement of the along-shore winds (Susanto et al., 2001). However, 268 locations of maximum amplitude of the upwelling signatures may differ in space due to dynamical upper-ocean responses 269 to the wind forcing. One such example can be seen in a phase relation between the winds and SST along the Java coast; 270 strong winds appear in the western area of the Java coast while the SST signal comes further east (Naulita et al., 2020). In 271 addition to this local wind forcing, the Sumatra-Java coastal area is affected by remotely forced Kelvin waves propagating 272 from regions further northwest along the Sumatra coast and from the equatorial Indian Ocean. Several studies have shown 273 that both the local wind forcing and this remote wave influence play key roles in determining magnitude and area of the 274 Sumatra-Java upwelling (e.g. Cheng et al., 2016; Horii et al., 2016; Delman et al., 2018).

275

276 The local and remote influences vary year-to-year, generating interannual variability of upwelling strength and spatial 277 coverage. The most significant interannual variability is the Indian Ocean Dipole mode (IOD), whose center of action in the 278 eastern pole appears over the Sumatra-Java upwelling region. During the positive IOD, the southeastern Indian Ocean, 279 particularly along the Sumatra-Java coasts, are occupied by negative SST anomaly, which tends to be phase-locked to the 280 seasonal upwelling during the boreal summer to fall. While the cool SST in seasonal variation is pronounced along the Java 281 coast (see Figure 20), the interannual SST anomaly appears in both Sumatra and Java coastal regions. In addition, the 282 upwelling variability in the interannual time-scale is also related to ENSO phenomena in the Pacific Ocean (Susanto et al., 283 2001: Susanto and Marra, 2005), partly due to co-occurrence of ENSO and IOD in some years and also to atmospheric 284 teleconnections from the Pacific to modify strength of along coast component of the wind stress over Sumatra and Java.

285

286 There are attempts to investigate the ocean processes responsible for the seasonal and interannual variations in the mixed-287 layer or upper-layer temperature using heat/temperature budget analyses. Both the seasonal and interannual variations are 288 dominated by vertical processes associated with the Ekman upwelling, with significant contributions from horizontal 289 advection, including the one from the Indonesian throughflow (e.g. Qu et al., 1994; Du et al., 2005, 2008). The barrier layer 290 is also affecting the seasonal SST variability, especially in the region off Sumatra coast (Du et al., 2005; Qu and Meyers, 291 2005b). For interannual time-scales, the SST variability is driven by both the local and remote wind forcing, both of which 292 are strongly related to the IOD and to lesser extent to ENSO, while the thermocline depth variations are mostly due to the 293 remote wave influences from the equatorial eastern Indian Ocean (Chen et al., 2016). There are several studies, including 294 those under the IIOE-2 program, focusing on the roles of variability in the upwelling region on the evolution of IOD events. 295 Initiation of positive IOD events is related to anomalous cooling off the coast of Sumatra-Java, which may be generated by local winds, particularly along the coast of Sumatra Island (Delman et al., 2016, 2018; Kämpf and Kavi, 2019), or remotely forced Kelvin wave signal originated in the equatorial Indian Ocean (Horii et al., 2008). During the mature stage of the positive IOD, vertical upwelling processes as well as horizontal advection contribute in keeping anomalous cooling of the SST off the coasts of Sumatra and Java (Du et al., 2008; Chen et al., 2016). While the seasonal march to the northwesterly monsoon condition terminates this maintaining process forced by local and remote winds, oceanic eddy heat flux associated with mesoscale eddies generated by enhanced instability during the height of the positive IOD is also shown to facilitate disappearance of the anomalous conditions in the strong events (Ogata and Masumoto, 2010, 2011).

303

304 The upwelling off Sumatra and Java is also affected by intraseasonal variability in the ocean and atmosphere. These 305 intraseasonal variability is, as in the case of seasonal and interannual variations, due both to the local winds and to remotely 306 forced oceanic Kelvin waves (Iskandar et al., 2006; Horii et al., 2016). Even during the height of the positive IOD in 2008, 1307 strong intraseasonal upwelling signals are observed in temperature and salinity profiles obtained by Argo floats (Horii et al., 308 2018). In addition, a long-term trend in the upwelling strength is studied recently. For example, Varela et al. (2016) suggests 1309 the weakening of the upwelling while the SST shows a cooling trend due to cooler subsurface temperature. Sources of this 1310 upwelled water mass are not clearly determined vet. A study using a numerical model proposes the Indonesian throughflow 311 as a possible source for the upwelling water off Java coast (Valsala and Maksyutov, 2010), while another study suggests 1312 that water mass from the northwest via South Java Current could be upwelled in this region (Varela et al., 2016).

# **2.10.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts**

314 The Java upwelling region off Indonesia is the only example of eastern boundary upwelling in the Indian Ocean. In contrast 315 to the large eastern boundary upwelling in the Pacific and Atlantic Ocean, it occurs only seasonally during the SEM in 316 association with the reversing South Java Current (Sprintall et al., 1999; Susanto et al., 2001) and, like the Bay of Bengal, 1317 is strongly influenced by freshwater inputs from the maritime Indonesian continent (Rixen et al., 2006). As in the other 318 EBUS, high biological productivity is observed in the Sumatra-Java upwelling region during boreal summer and fall (Wei 319 et al., 2012), with high nutrient and chlorophyll-a concentrations along the coasts (e.g. Wyrtki 1962; Tranter and Newell, 1320 1962; Susanto et al., 2001; Asanuma et al., 2003; Iskandar et al., 2009). Spatial distributions and temporal variations of 321 various biogeochemical parameters have been detected from in-situ observations, coral records, and sediment cores for the 322 present situations and paleo-oceanographic conditions (e.g. Grumet et al., 2004; Murgese and De Deckker, 2005; Andruleit 1323 2007; Andruleit et al., 2008; Baumgart et al., 2010; Ehlert et al., 2011). Satellites reveal that elevated Chla (>2 mg m<sup>-3</sup>) first 324 appears off Java in June and persists into November (Lévy et al., 2006, 2007; Hood et al., 2017), with primary production 325 estimates in August exceeding 1 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup> (Hood et al., 2017). Relaxation of SEM winds and downwelling Kelvin waves 326 (Sprintall et al., 1999) suppress productivity in the fall. Zooplankton biomass increases by about an order of magnitude 1327 seasonally in the Java upwelling (Tranter and Kerr, 1969, 1977).

Recent in-situ observations in the Sumatra-Java upwelling region conducted during the IIOE-2 period indicate different phytoplankton composition and assemblages between upwelling and non-upwelling regions (Gao et al., 2018) and physical and biological processes that determine aragonite saturation state (Xue et al., 2016). Efforts to develop and improve biogeochemical model of the upwelling systems are also in progress (e.g. Sreeush et al., 2018). These researches on biogeochemistry are important to understand key processes operating in the Sumatra-Java upwelling system. However, these results are rather fragmentary at this stage and integrated studies on biophysical interactions, ecosystem dynamics, and marine food web in the Sumatra-Java upwelling region are needed.

## **2.11 West coast of Australia**

## **2.11.1 Background**

Unlike other eastern boundary systems, such as the highly productive Humboldt and Benguela upwelling systems, the west coast of Australia features a downwelling current that carries tropical water southward along the shelf-break (Pearce, 1991). In the late nineteenth century, the presence of tropical corals at the Abrolhos Islands (28°- 29°S 114° E) was observed by Saville-Kent (1897), and from sea temperature measurements, he postulated that there was an offshore, warm, southwardflowing current. A drift-card study conducted near Rottnest Island (32°S, 115°E) confirmed that during the austral winter, there was a southward flowing current (Rochford, 1969), and Gentilli (1972) explored the seasonal southward progression of "rafts" of warm water off the west coast of Australia.

345

346 The Leeuwin Current (LC) was named and described by Cresswell and Golding (1980) from the trajectories of satellite-347 tracked buoys and measurements of surface temperature and salinity from the shelf and slope stations. Other early studies 348 of the LC used current meters, shipboard measurements, satellite imagery, steric height gradients, wind stress calculations 349 and modelling. They identified the seasonal nature of the current, origins along the North West Shelf, eastward extension 350 to the Great Australian Bight, frequent presence of meanders and eddies, and low nutrient status (Godfrev & Ridgway, 1985; 351 Holloway & Nye, 1985; Pearce, 1991; Smith et al., 1991; Thompson, 1984; Thompson & Veronis, 1983; Weaver & 352 Middleton, 1989). Essentially, the alongshore steric height gradient is set up by the Indonesian throughflow (which delivers 353 warm, less saline waters from the Pacific into the Indian Ocean) and surface heat loss at higher latitudes (Smith et al., 1991). 354 Later, using remote sensing and modeling, research attention centered on understanding the influence of the LC on the 355 recruitment of puerulus larvae of the economically-important rock lobster *Panulirus cygnus* (e.g., Griffin et al., 2001; 356 Phillips and Pearce, 1997).

1357

358 More recent shipboard studies along the entire west coast of Australia (Weller et al., 2011; Woo and Pattiaratchi, 2008) 359 provided more detailed information on the trajectory and features of the LC, including the chemistry, primary production, 360 zooplankton and larval fishes (Buchanan and Beckley, 2016; Holliday et al., 2012; Lourey et al., 2012; Sutton and Beckley, 361 2016: Thompson et al., 2011). Further, remote sensing and modeling have confirmed the seasonal nature of the LC and the 362 influence of the El Niño Southern Oscillation with stronger LC flows occurring during La Niña years (Domingues et al., 363 2007; Feng et al., 2003). The ecological significance of the LC eddy field was investigated with two dedicated voyages 364 (Paterson et al., 2008; Waite et al., 2007b). The most recent ecological work explored the significance of the LC and its 365 eddy field on the ecology of the planktonic phyllosoma of P. cvgnus in the wake of a drastic decline in puerulus settlement 366 (Saunders et al., 2012; Säwström et al., 2014; Waite et al., 2019).

367

368 Many of the early studies on the LC noted the occurrence of inshore northward-flowing currents during the summer months 369 (e.g., Thompson and Veronis, 1983; Thompson, 1984) with Holloway and Nye (1985) specifically mentioning upwelling 370 along the northwest coast. Subsequent studies highlighted regional upwelling nodes (see below) and, using an upwelling 371 index developed from 15 years of satellite data, Rossi et al. (2013b) produced a synopsis covering the development of 372 sporadic upwelling events (generally lasting 3-10 days) along the entire western coast of Australia (Figure 21 and 22). 373 Although such upwelling generally occurs from September to April (austral summer) sporadic events can occur at any time 374 north of 30°S (Figure 23). Upwelling favorable winds, local topography, and the characteristics of the LC such as onshore 1375 geostrophic flow, stratification, mesoscale eddies, and meanders influence the intensity of intermittent upwelling. For this 1376 review of upwelling along the western coast of Australia, we have separated the coast into three nodes of upwelling, namely, 1377 the South West (35°-30° S). Central (30°-25° S). Gascovne (25°- 22° S) and will also cover upwelling in the eddy field.

378

The vast eddy-field associated with the LC is well-known and has been investigated by numerous oceanographers and shown to influence regional biogeochemistry and pelagic ecology (e.g., Andrews, 1977; Feng et al., 2007; Waite et al., 2007b; Moore et al., 2007; Paterson et al., 2008; Holliday et al., 2011; Dufois et al., 2014). Though the warm, anticyclonic eddies have been explored in greater detail than the cyclonic eddies, it is the latter which are cold-core upwelling systems and deserve mention here as they have been shown to drive a significant fraction of cross-shelf transport and enhance local and regional productivity (Waite et al., 2016).

385

A study contrasting a dipole pair of eddies off Western Australia revealed many differences in the biota between the two eddies (Muhling et al., 2007; Strzelecki et al., 2007) as a result of the differences in physical and chemical properties. Warmcore eddies (WCEs; anticyclonic) have greater surface chlorophyll signatures compared to cold-core eddies (CCEs; cyclonic) in the eastern Indian Ocean (Dufois et al., 2014; Waite et al., 2016). Yet, Waite et al. (2019) showed that CCEs actually have greater depth-integrated primary productivity as their shallower mixed layers are closer to the nutricline and across pycnocline mixing then increases the upward flux of dissolved inorganic nutrients. This results in greater flagellate and dinoflagellate populations in CCEs, which provide a high-quality food source for zooplankton, and consequently increases their lipid stores (Waite et al., 2019). Earlier work showed no significant differences between the fractionated isotopic zooplankton analyses between CCEs and WCEs but highlighted that micro-heterotrophs are positioned on a trophic level as third and fourth-order consumers (Waite et al., 2007a). The high position of micro-heterotrophs again confirms the rapid recycling of particulate organic matter in this system in general (Hanson et al., 2005; Raes et al., 2014; Twomey et al., 2007). Further, upwelling eddies generated by the Leeuwin Undercurrent in the Perth Canyon have been implicated in the abundance of krill in the area and consequent feeding of migrating blue whales (Rennie et al., 2007).

#### **2.11.2 Upwelling nodes**

400 South West. A northward-flowing inshore current along parts of the southwest coast was indicated by several early LC 401 studies (Cresswell et al., 1989; Cresswell and Peterson, 1993; Cresswell and Golding, 1980; Pearce, 1991; Thompson, 1987). 402 For example, Cresswell and Peterson (1993) noted in the austral summer of 1986-87 that a cold upwelling plume ( $^{17.5^{\circ}C}$ ) 403 extended westward along the shelf from the southern coast of Western Australia around Cape Leeuwin and northward to 404 Cape Naturaliste. They speculated that the absence of the LC south of 34°S might have allowed upwelling-favorable easterly 405 winds on the south coast to drive this upwelling. From a detailed analysis of satellite imagery (1987-1993) and environmental 406 data, Pearce and Pattiaratchi (1999) described the narrow, northward flowing counter-current between Cape Leeuwin and 407 Cape Naturaliste during the austral summer months and named it the Capes Current. They indicated that strong northward 408 wind stresses between November and March slowed the LC and drove the Capes Current and that localized upwelling also 409 contributed to it. This upwelling was examined by Gersbach et al. (1999) using XBT, CTD, nutrient, and ADCP data from 410 summer sections off Cape Mentelle (located between Cape Leeuwin and Cape Naturaliste) and several sections between 411 Albany and Perth, as well as wind data and satellite imagery. They concluded that northward wind stress in summer could 412 overcome the alongshore steric height gradient on the continental shelf, inducing the thermocline to lift and sporadic 413 upwelling to occur 5-9 times per summer. Interestingly, the T/S characteristics of the water upwelled at Cape Mentelle were 414 slightly different from that of the current setup from the south (Gersbach et al., 1999). Rossi et al. (2013b) indicated that, 415 overall, the transient upwelling events in this southwest region last 3-10 days, and shelf regions between 34°S and 31.5°S 416 exhibit up to 12 upwelling days per month during the austral spring/summer (Figure 22). Historical current measurements 417 near Perth suggest that the Capes Current continues northwards past Rottnest Island, and there may also be links with shelf 418 counter-currents well past the Abrolhos Islands at 29°S (Cresswell et al., 1989).

419

*Central coast.* Along the central Western Australian shelf inshore of the Leeuwin Current, there is a general northward flow
during the austral summer months based on current measurements across the shelf near the Houtman Abrolhos Islands
(Cresswell et al., 1989; Rochford, 1969). Rossi et al. (2013b) indicated a high upwelling index along the central coast with

- l423 locations around 28°S and 26°S producing elevated mean numbers of upwelling days per year. Interestingly, both show
- peaks in upwelling from March to May, with upwelling at 28° S continuing through the austral winter.
- 425

426 Gascovne coast. The Gascovne coast is characterised by a northward flowing inshore current known as the Ningaloo 427 Current, Various studies have revealed that the Ningaloo Current consists of water sourced from upwelling of shallow water 428 (~100 m) from the base of the LC (Hanson et al., 2005; Taylor and Pearce, 1999; Woo and Pattiaratchi, 2008; Woo et al., 429 2006a, 2006b). Previously, it was understood to be strongly seasonal in the austral summer, but recent investigations have 430 shown autumn upwelling events as well (Lowe et al., 2012; Xu et al., 2013; Rossi et al., 2013a). The source water in autumn 431 may be from a greater depth (150m) under the increased mixed layer depth (Rossi et al., 2013a). The Ningaloo upwelling 432 region around 22.5°S has the highest number of upwelling days per year (140), and the events are often longer in duration 433 than elsewhere on the west coast (Rossi et al., 2013b).

434

#### 435 **2.11.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts**

|436|Nutrients, primary productivity, pro- and micro- eukaryotes. Regional dynamics along the west coast of Australia controls|437|the spatio-temporal variability of biogeochemical cycles, such as primary productivity and nutrient cycles in general. Water|438|column productivity along the west coast of Australia (generally <200 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup>; Hanson et al., 2005) peaks at the deep|439|chlorophyll maximum (DCM), which is closely aligned with the base of the nutricline. Productivity at the DCM in this|440|system is strongly influenced by the mixed layer depth (MLD), with deeper DCMs having lower productivity and shallower|441|DCMs resulting in higher productivity rates (Hanson et al., 2007a; Johannes et al., 1994).

442

443 Furnas (2007) argued that intermittent bursts of high productivity could occur in specific locations or under certain 444 circumstances along this coast. The strength of the LC is controlled by the weakening of southerly winds in the austral 445 autumn and winter. Modeling results from Feng et al. (2003) suggest that an increase in the southward transport of the LC 446 has been linked to an erosion of the thermocline, which then brings  $NO_3^{-}$  into the euphotic zone, thereby enhancing primary 447 productivity in early autumn (Feng et al., 2009; Rousseaux et al., 2012). Satellite observations across the shelf and LC 448 confirmed these results with the highest chlorophyll levels in autumn and winter (Lourey et al., 2006; Lourey et al., 2012). 449 Similarly, in summer, the wind-driven Capes Current locally enhances productivity near the shelf (Pearce and Pattiaratchi, 450 1999), yet, generally, the oligotrophic nature of this system limits NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> driven new production throughout the year (Hanson 451 et al., 2005; Twomey et al., 2007). The recycling of organic matter, however, via microbial regeneration has been shown to 452 primarily control the rates of primary production in this system (Hanson et al., 2007b; Pearce et al., 2006; Twomey et al., 453 2007) rather than the strong upwelling as seen in other eastern boundary systems, such as the Humboldt and Benguela 454 systems (Hood et al., 2017).

456 The inputs of new N derived from N<sub>2</sub> fixation is also an important pathway supporting primary productivity in this region. 457 Along the Western Australian shelf from 32°S northwards to 12°S, and west to 110°E, the contribution of new N from N<sub>2</sub> 458 fixation towards the total dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) assimilation pool can be  $\sim 20\%$  and up to 50% during the 459 winter months (with N<sub>2</sub> fixation rates ranging from 0.01 up to 12 nmol<sup>-1</sup> L<sup>-1</sup> h<sup>-1</sup>), making N<sub>2</sub> fixation equal to NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> in terms 460 of N assimilation into this ecosystem (Raes et al., 2015; Raes et al., 2014). Waite et al. (2013) and Raes et al. (2015) also 461 noted that the small diffusive deep-water  $NO_3^-$  fluxes are not able to support the measured  $NO_3^-$  assimilation rates. Their 462 data suggest that nitrification above the nutricline (referred to as "shallow nitrification"; see also Thompson et al., 2011) 463 could be an important pathway of the N-cycle along the southwest coast of Australia. Waite et al. (2016) suggested that the 464 persistent layers of low oxygen, high dissolved nitrogen (LDOHN;  $O_2 \sim 150$  umol L<sup>-1</sup> and NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>  $\sim 2-10$  umol L<sup>-1</sup>) just below 465 the euphotic zone (~150-250m; Thompson et al., 2011; Weller et al., 2011) are hotspots for the mineralization of organic 466 material from local sources (< 500 km away). In addition, Waite et al. (2016) noted that the depletion of oxygen in these 467 isolated layers along with the release of NO<sub>3</sub>, could happen on a time-scale of  $\sim 2$  weeks. Warren (1981), on the other hand, 468 originally suggested that the isolated nature of the lower oxygen features is created by density gradients, which prevent the 469 mixing of deep  $O_2$  rich water. According to Thompson et al. (2011) and Weller et al. (2011), the source of the oxygen 470 minimum laver is associated with multiple water masses further upstream, possibly at lower latitudes north of Australia. 471 Overall, a number of studies point to the conclusion that an active microbial loop (Azam et al., 1983) controls the biogenic 472 C and N fluxes through heterotrophic recycling via ammonification, nitrification, and N<sub>2</sub> fixation in this vast region (Hanson 473 et al., 2007b; Raes et al., 2015; Waite et al., 2016).

474

475 The west coast of Australia has a subtropical phytoplankton cycle, with a winter bloom, similar to the open ocean waters of 476 the subtropical South Indian Ocean (Figure 24). Picoplankton (unicellular cvanobacteria and prochlorophytes) have been 477 shown to contribute >40% of the pigment biomass (Hanson et al., 2007b). In terms of bio-volume, the Dinophyceae, 478 including large gymnoids and other Dinophyceae (e.g., Gyrodinium spp., Prorocentrum spp.), are the most abundant 479 microplankton and can account for up to 50% of the microplankton component in this region (Raes et al., 2014). Sightings 480 of N<sub>2</sub>-fixing microorganisms (such as *Trichodesmium*) in the oligotrophic waters off the west coast of Australia date back 481 to vovages of Captain Cook and Charles Darwin (Cook et al., 1999; Darwin, 1889). Trichodesmium occurrences have been 482 measured at the Australian National Reference stations from the tropics (Darwin) to the temperate waters off Rottnest Island.

483

Amplicon sequencing of the nitrogenase (*nifH*) gene, however, has shown a low diazotrophic evenness across a transect along the shelf from Perth (32°S) to Darwin (10°S). One operational taxonomic unit (OTU) made up 65–95% of the *nifH* enzyme diversity along the transect, and was identified as a Gamma 4 proteobacteria (Raes et al., 2018). This dominant *nifH* OTU was nearly identical (one nucleotide difference) to the gamma 4 proteobacteria (HM201363.1) found by Halm et al. (2012) in the oligotrophic South Pacific Gyre. The ubiquitous finding of these gamma proteobacterial *nifH* genes is
consistent with the results from Schmidt et al. (1991) and Langlois et al. (2015) in open, oligotrophic oceanic waters.

490

491 Zooplankton, Ecological studies about zooplankton community structure along the west coast of Australia are few, and 492 most studies have examined specific taxa (e.g., larval fishes, chaetognaths, or krill) particularly in relation to the effect of 493 the LC on dispersal (Becklev et al., 2009; Buchanan & Becklev, 2016; Holliday et al., 2012; Sutton & Becklev, 2016). 494 Although inshore stations (50 m depth) were sampled during the voyage when most of these studies were made (extending 495 from 22°S - 34°S), there was no evidence of coastal upwelling, likely because it was conducted in the austral autumn (May 496 2007). Recently, meso-zooplankton abundance, composition, and diversity data from the three years (2010-2012) that the 497 IMOS Australian National Reference Stations (Ningaloo, Rottnest Island, and Esperance) were concurrently sampled were 498 analyzed (McCosker et al., 2020). Besides the obvious influence of the LC in winter, there were clear dissimilarities between 499 the copepod assemblages, particularly during the summer months when coastal upwelling-associated currents such as the 500 Capes and Ningaloo Currents influenced the biota.

501

502 Specific effects of coastal upwelling on zooplankton have not been explored in the South West, but concurrent with the 503 phytoplankton study of Koslow et al. (2008) across the Two Rocks transect north of Perth, mesozooplankton assemblages 504 were examined (Strzelecki and Koslow, 2006). During the summer, the inshore shelf stations were found to have 505 significantly higher zooplankton abundance than the offshore sampling stations, but this was reversed in the winter months 506 when the LC was flowing strongly. Copepod production ranged from 0.4-10 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup> (Strzelecki and Koslow, 2006). 1507 which is low compared to upwelling regions elsewhere in the world but comparable to copepod production in the North 1508 West Cape region (McKinnon and Duggan, 2003). Along the same cross-shelf transect, Muhling and Beckley (2007) and 509 Muhling et al. (2008b) found clear seasonal differences in the diversity and abundance of inshore larval fish assemblages 1510 when the cool Capes Current was flowing northwards during the austral summer compared to the austral winter months 511 when the LC strongly influenced larval fish assemblages on the continental shelf.

512

Little is known about the effect of coastal upwelling on zooplankton along the central part of the Western Australian coast, and the only extensive zooplankton survey in the region targeted the phyllosoma larvae of the rock lobster, *Panulirus cygnus*. Nevertheless, the study highlighted the presence of the Abrolhos front separating the tropical waters of the LC from the dominant oligotrophic subtropical surface water (STSW), and the LC waters had much higher chlorophyll *a* and zooplankton concentrations than the STSW (Säwström et al., 2014).

518

In the north, the coastal copepod communities at Ningaloo are diverse (> 120 species; McKinnon and Duggan 2001). They are characterized by small "upwelling- ready" species, which can react quickly to pulses of sporadic upwelling and phytoplankton blooms, but, unlike the high primary production rates, copepod production rates are generally low (~ 13 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup>; Hanson and McKinnon, 2009). Interestingly, *Calanoides carinatus*, a copepod that is characteristic of upwelling regimes elsewhere, was absent, and they proposed that upwelling was too infrequent and episodic to sustain zooplankton specific to upwelling regimes. Of the macro-zooplankton, krill, especially *Pseudeuphausia latifrons* has been investigated in coastal waters at Ningaloo (Wilson et al., 2003), and seasonal occurrence of whale sharks has been linked to aggregations of this species during the austral autumn months (Hanson and McKinnon 2009).

527

528 Fisheries. Investigations into the spawning of sardines (Sardinops sagax) off southwestern Australia have highlighted 529 advective transport (Fletcher et al., 1994; Gaughan et al., 2001b) and variation in the growth rate of larvae from areas with 530 different levels of productivity (Gaughan et al., 2001a). Muhling et al. (2008a) showed that, although adult sardines had a 531 winter spawning peak coinciding with the seasonal peak in chlorophyll a (Koslow et al., 2008), it also matched the seasonal 532 peak in the southward flow of the LC, resulting in low retention of the early life history stages. Thus, egg and larval 533 concentrations were lower than expected in winter but higher in summer when retention conditions were more favorable. 534 They postulated that, as larval growth rates were actually high, the insignificant catches of adults in the fishery compared to 535 other eastern boundary upwelling systems was due to a combination of suppression of large-scale upwelling and the modest 536 seasonal maximum in primary productivity occurring during the time least favourable for pelagic larval retention.

537

538 There have been commentaries on the role of the Capes Current in assisting migrations of south coast fish species such as 539 Arripis truttaceus and Arripis georgianus in their migrations to autumn spawning areas in southwestern Australia and 540 subsequent return transport of early life stages by the LC during winter (Pearce and Pattiaratchi, 1999). Both Caputi et al. 541 (1996) and Lenanton et al. (2009) have reviewed the importance of the LC with respect to Western Australian fisheries and 542 have noted the likely role of the Capes Current for several species, including the economically important rock lobster. 543 Through modeling, Feng et al. (2010) examined dispersal and retention areas along the west coast. Although the LC was 544 dominant in winter, northward flow in summer was linked with recruitment success of scallops (Amusium balloti), abalone 545 (Haliotis roei), and tropical sardines (Sardinella lemuru).

# **3. Open Ocean Upwelling: Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge**

# **3.1 Background**

The Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge (SCTR, Xie et al, 2002; Hermes and Reason, 2008; Yokoi et al., 2008; Vialard et al., 2009b) is an upwelling region across the southern tropical Indian Ocean between ~ 5-15°S and ~50-80°E (Figure 25).
It is characterized by a thin mixed layer (~30m) and a relatively shallow thermocline. The ridge, and the upwelling associated with it, is set up by wind stress curl patterns, and it has significant variability on seasonal and interannual time scales due to

- both remote and local and forcing (Xie et al., 2002; Hermes and Reason, 2008; Yokoi et al., 2008; McPhaden and Nagura,
- 2014; Nyadjro et al., 2017). It is coincident with the southernmost latitudes of monsoon-driven circulation in the Indian
- Ocean, south of which a steadier trade wind regime prevails (Figure 1). During boreal winter, the Intertropical Convergence
- 255 Zone (ITCZ) is located over the SCTR. The ITCZ and associated rainfall migrate northwards to the Indian subcontinent as
- the year progresses, where it is the source of precipitation during the summer monsoon.
- 1557
- Upwelling along the SCTR affects sea surface temperature (SST, Figure 26), biogeochemistry (Figure 26), and fisheries (Figure 27), and drives strong ocean-atmosphere coupling (Vinayachandran and Saji, 2008, Vialard et al., 2009; Resplandy et al., 2009; Robinson et al., 2010; Dilmahamod et al., 2016). As discussed previously, upwelling centers in the monsoondominated Indian Ocean are found in off-equatorial regions because the mean winds along the equator are westerly, unlike in the easterly trade wind-forced Pacific and Atlantic Oceans (Schott et al., 2009; Wang and McPhaden, 2017). The SCTR
- is the largest and most persistent upwelling region in the Indian Ocean.

#### 1564 3.2. Mechanisms

The SCTR represents the ascending branch of the subtropical circulation cell in the southern hemisphere, where upwelling is balanced primarily by meridionally divergent flow in the surface layer (Lee, 2004; Figure 28). Horizontal flow in the upper ocean circulates cyclonically around the SCTR axis, with the westward-flowing South Equatorial Current (SEC) to the south and the eastward-flowing South Equatorial Countercurrent (SECC) to the north (Figure 25). The westward-flowing SEC in the SCTR region provides the conduit for interbasin exchanges that link the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean through the Indonesian Seas and the Agulhas Current.

571 SST varies substantially in the SCTR on intraseasonal to interannual time scales because the shallow mixed layer is sensitive 1572 to changes in upwelling, vertical mixing, air-sea heat fluxes, and horizontal advection (Vialard et al., 2008; Foltz et al., 1573 2010). On intraseasonal time scales, pronounced SST variations in the SCTR happen in response to forcing from the 1574 Madden-Julian Oscillation (MJO, Madden and Julian 1972), which is generated in this region. This variability feeds back 575 to the atmosphere, which helps to organize the MJO convective cells. Large SST variations on interannual time scales are 576 associated with the El Nino Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD; Webster et al., 1999; Saji et 577 al., 1999). This year-to-year SST variability affects the frequency of Indian summer monsoon rainfall (Izumo et al., 2008), 1578 tropical storms in the southwestern Indian Ocean (Xie et al., 2002), and the climate of East Asia (Yamagata et al., 2004).

## **3.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts**

580 The nutricline shoals sharply due to upwelling in the SCTR where average nitrate concentration between the surface and 80 581 m depth exceed 5 µM in a bullseve centered at about 62°E, 8°S (Resplandy et al., 2009). Satellite observations and model 1582 results reveal elevated near-surface Chla and primary production in the SCTR region with the highest values in austral winter (June-August; >0.20 mg m<sup>-3</sup> and >600 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup>, respectively, see Figures 5 and 6 in Hood et al., 2017) due to the strong 583 584 southeasterly winds that increase wind stirring and induce upwelling (Resplandy et al., 2009; Dilmahamod, 2014). 585 Meridional sections through the SCTR region reveal a deep Chla maximum that shoals from >100 m further south to  $\sim 50$ 1586 m due to upwelling (George et al., 2013). Wind-induced mixing during MJO episodes (which typically occur between 587 January and March) can also lead to enhanced Chla at intra-seasonal time scales in the SCTR region (Resplandy et al., 2009; 588 Dilmahamod et al., 2016). Zooplankton biomass is relatively low in the SCTR for most of the year with a pronounced 4-589 5X peak during the SWM upwelling in August (austral winter). Observational studies have revealed concentrated tuna 590 fishing activities in the SCTR (Fonteneau et al. 2008) which are associated with the aforementioned regions of elevated 591 Chla, primary production and zooplankton biomass, demonstrating a strong connection between the food webs that respond 592 to enhanced production in the SCTR the prev required by large tuna. The IOD also profoundly affects this tuna fishery. 593 which is well developed in the SCTR region during normal years (Figure 27). However, during the positive IOD events, 594 when upwelling is weakened in the SCTR and strengthened off the coast of Java and Sumatra, tuna migrate eastward, 595 apparently in search of more favorable foraging grounds (Figure 27, Robinson et al., 2010).

The extent to which iron may be a limiting primary production in the SCTR is unknown, though independent modeling studies and remote sensing-based analyses both suggest it may be (Wiggert et al., 2006; Behrenfeld et al., 2009). Finally, there is still considerable uncertainty in whether the Indian Ocean is a net source or sink of carbon to the atmosphere because the variability in pCO<sub>2</sub> fluxes across the air-sea interface is poorly constrained by existing observations, particularly in active upwelling zones like the SCTR.

## **4.** Summary

602 The unique features of the oceanography of the Indian Ocean and the complexities associated with its circulation, boundary 603 currents, climate, and ecosystem response, driven and modulated by the monsoons, have been a matter of extensive 604 discussion in the past reviews of the Indian Ocean (Shetye and Gouveia, 1998, Schott and McCreary, 2001 Shankar et al., 605 2002, Hood et al. 2017). The coastal upwelling, despite its importance for the ecosystem and economic impacts, however, 606 has not received sufficient attention (Hood et al., 2017). Several new research programs were launched in the last decade, 607 which has shed considerable new light on the coastal upwelling system in the Indian Ocean. The WIOURI was initiated to 608 study nine upwelling systems in the western Indian Ocean (Roberts, 2015). Similarly, EIOURI was planned to study a large 609 spectrum of processes affecting the upwelling in the eastern half of the Indian Ocean (Yu et al., 2016). Along the coasts of 610 India, an array of ADCP mooring deployed since 2008 (Mukhopadhyay et al., 2020, Chaudhari et al., 2020). Such programs

- have contributed significantly to enhancing our knowledge of the science of the upwelling in the Indian Ocean, ecosystem
- impacts, and sensitivity to changes in the environment. The prime goal of this paper is to review the present understandingof upwelling in the Indian Ocean, extending from the Agulhas region to the western coast of Australia.
- 614

615 The Upwelling. While some of the upwelling systems, such as that along the Somali coast, were surveyed early (during 616 IIOE or before), others such as Mozambique were sampled much later. The surveys, particularly those in the recent period, 617 have revealed multiple processes that trigger and control upwelling, the combination varying for each of the systems. Salient 618 features of their progress are summarized in this paper. The northeast monsoon winds are favourable for upwelling along 619 the western boundary in the southern hemisphere, up to about 20°S. Along the coast of Kenya, in addition to an Ekman type 620 of mechanism, shelf-break upwelling induced by topography is a driving force. Along the coast of Tanzania, the additional 621 forcing for upwelling is drawn from the shear instability of EACC. In the Mozambique channel, competing roles of local 622 winds and eddies drive upwelling in the channel. South of Madagascar, upwelling is caused by local winds, the interaction 623 of the currents with the continental margin and eddies. Eddies associated with Natal pulses cause subsurface upwelling in 624 the Agulhas region, and surface-reaching upwelling occurs in its inshore edge due to dynamical processes and wind forcing.

625

626 The distinct feature of the Somali upwelling system is the cold wedges. One wedge forms in May on the shoreward edge of 627 the Southern Gyre during May and the other along the northern flank of the Great Whirl, during the peak of the summer 628 monsoon. The presence of multiple gyres and the intense current present a complicated upwelling system in this region. In 629 addition to alongshore winds, Rossby wave radiation from the east by Ekman pumping du to anticyclonic wind stress curl 630 drive upwelling in this region. The downwelling of the thermocline due to the wind stress curl, however, can lead to a 631 weakening of the upwelling as the deepening reaches up to the coastal region during the fully developed phase of the SWM. 632 Consequently, upwelling is limited to frontal regions dominated by eddies. The coast of Oman, on the other hand, presents 633 a classical Ekman type of upwelling system. The intensity of the upwelling increases with the progress in the SWM. 634 However, the influence of Rossby wave radiation has been suggested to affect the timing of the peak phase of the SST 635 decrease associated with upwelling. Generation of eddies and filaments are well-known features associated with the currents 636 and upwelling along the coast of Oman.

637

Along the west coast of India, upwelling is more prominent along the southern part of the coast and begins about 4 months before the onset of the summer monsoon. The alongshore winds are weak and are only partly responsible for the upwelling. The major driving force is the coastally trapped wave propagation originating from the Bay of Bengal. The alongshore winds are unidirectional, but the currents reverse, confirming the dominant role of remote forcing. Winds along the southern tip of India and along the southern coast of Sri Lanka drive Ekman type of upwelling during the summer monsoon. Upwelling along the east coast of India is weak and available evidences suggest the presence of upwelling during the summer monsoon. The intricate combination of forcing by local winds, Kelvin waves originating from either EIO or the eastern boundary of

- the BoB, Rossby wave propagation all affect the upwelling. At interannual time scales, ENSO and IOD dominate the variability, whereas at intraseasonal time scales, mesoscale eddies appear to be important.
- 647

The upwelling along the Sumatra and Coasts is mainly driven by alongshore winds during the summer monsoon but affected by Kelvin wave propagations and circulation in the Equatorial Indian Ocean, Indonesian throughflow and the subtropical Indian Ocean. It is affected severely by IOD events and modified significantly by intraseasonal events. The circulation along the west coast of Australia is dominated by the LC but upwelling occurs at several nodes along the coast. Transient winddriven upwelling that lasts for 3-20 days occurs along the southwest part of the coast. Along the central coast, upwelling takes place during March-May. Along the Gascoyne coast, Ningaloo upwelling takes place during austral summer and autumn.

655

656 *Ecosystem Impacts.* It is evident that in all regions, the upwelling stimulates an ecosystem response and the facilitation of 657 this response is achieved by different processes in different regions. In the Mozambique channel, peripheries of the cyclonic 658 eddies are centers of biological activity in terms of increased productivity, aggregation of small organisms and foraging 659 bird populations. Along the southern coast of Madagascar, upwelling nodes enhance primary productivity, fish catch and 660 whale sightings. The interannual variability of the cyanobacteria bloom here is modulated by the detachment of the South-661 East Madagascar current. The chlorophyll concentration is high along the coasts of Somalia and Oman, during the summer 662 monsoon, which has been known since a long time. Recent advances in this region have been slow and a modeling study 663 suggests that the influence of upwelling is restricted to limited areas and the strong currents spread the effect to larger spatial 664 coverage. Off the coast of Oman, advection of nutrient-rich water can give rise to blooms in the offshore region.

665

666 Recent research has revealed the high impact of upwelling on the biogeochemistry of the eastern Arabian Sea. Most 667 significantly, the strong Ekman transport from the western Arabian Sea upwelling affects the OMZ and its spatial and 668 temporal limits more closer to the eastern Arabian Sea, and forms the source for upwelling over its eastern shelf, thus making 669 a tele-connection between upwelling over both the coasts of Arabian Sea This has an impact on the mesopelagic fish 670 population, benthic ecosystems, macro infaunal communities and biodiversity. The upwelling in the Bay of Bengal, on the 671 other hand, is weak and it is not clear what the ecosystem responses are to upwelling. The productivity appears to be 672 more under the control of eddies and the stratification imposed by rainfall and river runoff. The upwelling along the coasts 673 of Sumatra and Java enhances productivity and the phytoplankton composition here is distinctly different during upwelling 674 compared to that during downwelling. Along the west coast of Australia, upwelling has a lesser role in controlling the rates 675 of primary productivity compared to that of remineralization. However, there are indications that summertime zooplankton 676 biota is affected by upwelling. The SCTR is a prominent open ocean upwelling region in the Southern Topical Indian Ocean 677 that is caused primarily by the persistent wind stress curl and this upwelling has a clear expression on the surface chlorophyll 678 distribution. This region also has a significant role in the air-sea interaction in this region.

680 During the IIOE-2 period. Argo float measurements and satellite remote sensing data have been accumulated significantly 681 and there were several in-situ observations of physical and biogeochemical aspects of the upwelling systems. These data 682 provide us better understanding of physical processes responsible for the upwelling variability in various time-scales and 683 their impact on distributions of biogeochemical variables. However, *in-situ* measurements are still quite limited to obtain a 684 synthetic view of upwelling systems, particularly on biogeochemical parameters. Understanding of mixed-layer dynamics 685 and mixing processes in this unique region that affect subsurface oceanic variability and SST need to be investigated in 686 more detail. Further observations and accumulation of additional evidences are necessary to obtain a comprehensive view 687 of the upwelling systems in the Indian Ocean.

688

Future prospects. Some of the upwelling zones have registered significant progress during the period of IIOE-2 (2015 onwards) while some others have rather been left behind. Agulhas current, Mozambique channel, Madagascar Coasts and coasts of India, Sumatra-Java and Africa belong to the former category whereas Somali and Oman coasts to the latter. In addition, the northern coast of the Arabian Sea and the eastern boundary of the Bay of Bengal still remain poorly observed and understood. The spatial and temporal variability of upwelling is not sufficiently documented for most parts of the Indian Ocean coastline. This emphasizes the importance of sustained observations and modelling, and a combination of them.

695

696 The new knowledge that has been acquired from the recent research has posed new questions and challenges. One of them 697 is related to the variability of upwelling. There is a considerable gap in the space-time variability of upwelling in almost all 698 the regions, primarily owing to the lack of systematic long-term data sets with sufficient spatial resolution and coverage. 699 Second, the processes that drive upwelling are complicated in several regions and there is no consensus or quantitative 1700 account of the relative roles of each process; the role of eddies in the Mozambique channel, impact of currents along the 1701 southern coast of Madagascar and coastally trapped waves are good examples for the dichotomy. A combination of focused 1702 modelling studies and systematic observations are required to address such issues. The required in-situ observations need to 1703 be with high spatial and temporal resolutions and with the capability for long-term monitoring. In addition, intensive 1704 process-oriented observational programs are required to understand physical processes and their interconnection to the 1705 ecosystem. Such observing strategies together with high-resolution regional and global models that include both physical 1706 and biogeochemical/ecosystem components have the potential to develop strategies for sustainable uses of coastal resources. 1707 A related and more sophisticated issue is the ecosystem response and fisheries. While definite progress has been made in 1708 the Eastern Arabian Sea and off the coast of Australia, a complete picture regarding the dependence of marine biota on 1709 upwelling is yet to emerge for the entire upwelling system along the periphery of the Indian Ocean.

1710

1711Author contributions: PNV planned the outline of the paper and led the paper preparation. All authors contributed to the1712paper preparation.

- 1714 **Competing interests:** The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.
- 1715

# Acknowledgments

- 1717 This is a contribution from the Science Theme 2 of the IIOE-2. Partial financial support from SCOR is gratefully
- 1718 acknowledged. PNV acknowledges partial financial support from J C Bose National Fellowship, SERB, DST, Govt. India
- 1719 and BoBBLE project funded by the Ministry of Earth Sciences, Govt. of India under its Monsoon Mission program. NIO
- contribution number of this paper is 6808. INCOIS contribution number of this paper is 438. Thanks to Dr. D. Shankar for
- 1721 his comments on the manuscript and to Dr. C. P. Neema for help with manuscript preparation. We gratefully acknowledge
- the contribution of our co-author Dr. Satva Prakash to IIOE-2 before his untimely passing away in July 2021. This paper is
- dedicated to the memory of Dr. Satya Prakash.

# **References**

- Abdul Jaleel, K. U., Parameswaran, U. V., Gopal, A., Khader, C., Ganesh, T., Sanjeevan, V. N., Shunmugaraj, T.,
- Vijayan, A. K., and Gupta, G. V. M.: Evaluation of changes in macrobenthic standing stock and polychaete community
- structure along the south eastern Arabian Sea shelf during the monsoon trawl-ban, *Cont. Shelf Res.* 102, 9–18, doi:

10.1016/j. Csr.2015.04.011, 2015.

- Allen, J. S.: Upwelling and coastal jets in stratified ocean, J. Phys. Oceanography, 3, 245-257, doi:
- 1730 https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1973)003%3C0245:UACJIA%3E2.0.CO;2, 1973.
- Alvheim, O., Torstensen, E., Fennessy, S., MacKay, F., Zaera, D., and Bemiasa, J.: West Madagascar: Cruise Reports Dr
- Fridtjof Nansen. Pelagic Ecosystem Survey SWIOFP/ASCLME/FAO, Cruise 2, 25 August–3 October 2009, Preliminary report, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2009.
- Amol, P., Vinayachandran, P. N., Shankar, D, Thushara, V., Vijith, V., and Abhisek Chatterjee: Effect of freshwater
- advection and winds on the vertical structure of chlorophyII in the northern Bay of Bengal, Deep-Sea Res (Part II)., 179
- 104622), doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2019.07.010, 2019.
- 1737 Amol, P., Shankar, D., Fernando, V., Mukherjee, A., Aparna, S. G., Fernandes, R., Michael, G. S., Khalap, S. T., Satelkar,
- N. P., Agarvadekar, Y., Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Kankonkar, A., and Vernekar, S. P.: Observed intraseasonal and
- seasonal variability of the West India Coastal Current on the continental slope, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 123, 1045–1074,
- doi:10.1007/s12040-014-0449-5, 2014.
- Amol, P., Suchandan Bemal, Shankar, D., Jain, V., Thushara, V., Vijith, V. and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Modulation of
- chlorophyll concentration by downwelling Rossby waves during the winter monsoon in the southeastern Arabian Sea,
- Prog. Oceanogr., 186, 102365, doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2020.102365, 2020.
- Amol, P.: Impact of Rossby waves on chlorophyll variability in the southeastern Arabian Sea, Remote Sens. Lett., 9,
   1214–1223, doi.org/10.1080/2150704X, 2018.
- Anderson, D. L. T., and Moore, D. W.: Cross-equatorial inertial jets with special relevance to very remote forcing of the Somali Current, Deep-Sea Res., 26, 1–22, https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(79)90082-7, 1979.

- Andrews, J. C.: Eddy structure and the West Australian current, Deep Sea Res., 24(12), 1133-1148, doi:10.1016/0146-6291(77)90517-3, 1977.
- Andruleit, H.: Status of the Java upwelling area (Indian Ocean) during the oligotrophic northern hemisphere winter
- monsoon season as revealed by coccolithophores, Mar. Micropaleontol., 64, 36–51, doi:10.1016/j.marmicro.2007.02.001, 2007.
- Andruleit, H., A. Lückge, M. Wiedicke, and S. Stäger: Late Quaternary development of the Java upwelling system
- (eastern Indian Ocean) as revealed by coccolithophores, Mar. Micropaleontol., 69, 3–15,
- doi:10.1016/j.marmicro.2007.11.005, 2008.
- Anonymous: World atlas of sea surface temperatures, 2nd ed., U. S. Hydrographic Office, Washington D. C., Reprinted 1948, 1944.
- Anonymous: Temperature and monthly maps for the Indian Ocean, Edition 135, Royal Netherlands MeteorologicalInstitute, Den Haag, 1952.
- Aparna, S. G., McCreary, J. P., Shankar, D., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Signatures of the Indian Ocean Dipole and El
- Nino-Southern Oscillation events in sea level variations in the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 117:C10012, doi:
   10.1029/2012JC008055, 2012.
- Arístegui, J., Barton, E. D., Álvarez Salgado, X. A., Santos, A. M. P., Figueiras, F. G., Kifani, S., Hernndez-Len, S.,
- Mason, E., Mach, E., and Demarcq, H.: Sub-regional ecosystem variability in the Canary Current upwelling, Prog.
- Cceanogr., 83, 33–48, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.031, 2009.
- Asanuma, I., Matsumoto, K., Okano, H., Kawano, T., Hendiarti, N., and Sachoemar, S. I.: Spatial distribution of
  phytoplankton along the Sunda Islands: The monsoon anomaly in 1998, J. Geophys. Res., 108 (C6), 3202,
  doi:10.1029/1999JC000139, 2003.
- Augustyn, C. Lipinski, M., Sauer, Whh, Roberts, M. and Mitchell-Innes, B.A.: Chokka squid on the Agulhas Bank: Life
  history and ecology, S. Afr. J. Sci.. 90, 143-154, 1994.
- Azam, F., Fenchel, T., Field, J. G., Gray, J., Meyer-Reil, L., and Thingstad, F.: The ecological role of water-column microbes in the sea, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 10, 257-263, doi: 10.3354/meps010257, 1983.
- Babu, M. T., Sarma, Y. V. B., Murty, V. S. N., and Vethamony, P.: On the circulation in the Bay of Bengal during northern spring inter-monsoon (March-April 1987), Deep–Sea Res. (Part II), 5, 855–865, doi:10.1016/S0967–0645(02)00609–4., 2003.
- Bakun, A., Roy, C., and Lluch-Cota, S. E.: Coastal upwelling and other processes regulating ecosystem productivity and
  fish production in the western Indian Ocean, in Large marine ecosystems of the Indian Ocean: Assessment, sustainability,
  and management, Edited by Sherman K., Okemwa, EN and Ntiba MJ, 103–141, Blackwell Science Inc., 1998.
- Banse, K.: On upwelling and bottom-trawling off the southwest coast of India, J. mar. biol. Ass. India, 1, 33–49, 1959.
- Banse, K.: Hydrography of the Arabian Sea Shelf of India and Pakistan and effects on demersal fishes, Deep Sea Res.
- 781 Oceanogr. Abstr., 15, 45–79, doi:10.1016/0011-7471(68)90028-4, 1968.

- Barlow, R., Lamont, M.-J., Gibberd, R., Airs, L., Jacobs, and Britz, K.: Phytoplankton communities and acclimation in a cyclonic eddy in the southwest Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part I Oceanogr. Res., 18–30, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2017.03.013,
- 2017.
- Baumgart, A., Jennerjahn, T., Mohtadi, M., and Hebbeln, D.: Distribution and burial of organic carbon in sediments from
- the Indian Ocean upwelling region off Java and Sumatra, Indonesia, Deep Sea Res.I, 157, 458-467,
- doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2009.12.002, 2010.
- Beal, L. M., Chereskin, T. K., Lenn, Y. D., and Elipot, S.: The Sources and Mixing Characteristics of the Agulhas
  Current, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 36(11), 2060–2074, https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO2964.1, 2006.
- Beal, L. M., De Ruijter, W. P. M., Biastoch, A., Zahn, R., and SCOR/WCRP/IAPSO Working Group 136: On the role of the Agulhas system in ocean circulation and climate, Nature 472, 429-436, https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09983, 2011.
- Beal, L. M., and Donohue, K. A.: The Great Whirl: Observations of its seasonal development and interannual variability,
  J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118, 1–13, https://doi.org/10.1029/2012JC008198, 2013.
- Beal, L. M., Elipot, S., Houk, A., and Leber, G. M. : Capturing the Transport Variability of a Western Boundary Jet:
- Results from the Agulhas Current Time-Series Experiment (ACT)\*, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 45(5), 1302–1324,
  https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-14-0119.1, 2015.
- Beckley, L.E., Muhling, B.A. and Gaughan, D.J.: Larval fishes off Western Australia: influence of the Leeuwin Current, J
   R Soc West Aus, 92(2), 101-109, 2009.
- Behara, A., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: An OGCM study of the impact of rain and river water forcing on the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 121, 2425–2446, doi: :10.1002/2015JC011325, 2016.
- Behrenfeld, M. J., Westberry, T. K., Boss, E. S., O'Malley, R. T., Siegel, D. A., Wiggert, J. D., Franz, B. A., McClain, C.
- R., Feldman, G. C., Doney, S. C., Moore, J. K., Dall'Olmo, G., Milligan, A. J., Lima, I., and Mahowald, N.: Satellite detected fluorescence reveals global physiology of ocean phytoplankton, Biogeosciences, 6, 779–794,
- 1804 https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-6-779-2009, 2009.
- Bennett, B. A. : Aspects of the biology and life history of white steenbras *Lithognathus lithognathus* in southern Africa,
  South Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 13(1), 83-96, DOI: 10.2989/025776193784287257, 1993.
- Biastoch, A., Böning, C. W., Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Agulhas Leakage dynamics affects decadal variability in Atlantic
  overturning circulation, Nature, 456, 489–492, doi: 10.1038/nature07426, 2008.
- Braby, L.: Dynamics, interactions and ecosystem implications of mesoscale eddies formed in the southern region ofMadagascar, MSc thesis, University of Cape Town, South Africa, 54 pp, 2014.
- 811 Breitburg, D., Levin, L. A., Oschlies, A., Grégoire, M., Chavez, F. P., Conley, D. J., Garçon, V., Gilbert, D., Gutiérrez, D.,
- 812 Isensee, K., Jacinto, G. S., Limburg, K. E., Montes, I., Naqvi, S. W. A., Pitcher, G. C., Rabalais, N. N., Roman, M. R.,
- Rose, K. A., Seibel, B. A., and Zhang, J.: Declining oxygen in the global ocean and coastal waters, *Science*, *359*(6371),
- 1814 https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aam7240, 2018.
- Brinca, L., Rey, F., Silva, C., and Sætre, R.: A survey on the marine fish resources of Mozambique. October–November
- 1816 1980., Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1981.

- Brown, S. L., M. R. Landry, R. T. Barber, L. Campbell, D. L. Garrison, and Gowing, M. M.: Picophytoplankton dynamics
  and production in the Arabian Sea during the 1995 Southwest Monsoon, Deep Sea Res., Part II, 46, 1745 1768,
- 1819 https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(99)00042-9, 1999.
- Bryden, H. L., Beal, L. M. and Duncan, L. M.: Structure and Transport of the Agulhas Current and Its Temporal
  Variability, J Oceanogr 61, 479–492. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10872-005-0057-8, 2005.
- Buchanan, P., and Beckley, L. E.: Chaetognaths of the Leeuwin Current system: oceanographic conditions drive epipelagic zoogeography in the south-east Indian Ocean, Hydrobiologia, 763(1), 81-96, doi:10.1007/s10750-015-2364-4,
  2016.
- Capet, X., Colas, F., McWilliams, J. C., Penven, P., and Marchesiello, P: Eddies in Eastern Boundary Subtropical
- Upwelling Systems, Ocean Modeling in an Eddying Regime, Geophysical Monograph Se ries 177, AGU 131-147, doi:
- 10.1029/177GM10, 2008.
- 1828 Dilmahamod, A.: Links between the Seychelles-Chagos thermocline ridge and large scale climate modes and primary
   1829 productivity; and the annual cycle of chlorophyll-a. University of Cape Town., 2014.
- 1830 Capone, D. G., Subramaniam, A., Montoya, J. P., Voss, M., Humborg, C., Johansen, A. M., Siefert, R. L., and Carpenter,
- E. J.: An extensive bloom of the N<sub>2</sub>-fixing cyanobacterium *Trichodesmium erythraeum* in the central Arabian Sea, Mar.
- Ecol. Prog. Ser., 172, 281–292, doi: 10.3354/meps172281, 1998.
- Caputi, N., Fletcher, W., Pearce, A., and Chubb, C.: Effect of the Leeuwin Current on the recruitment of fish and
  invertebrates along the Western Australian coast, Mar. Freshw. Res., 47(2), 147-155, doi:10.1071/MF9960147, 1996.
- Carr, M.-E. and Kearns, E. J.: Production regimes in four Boundary Current Systems, Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Topical
   Studies in Oceanography, 50, 3199-3221.,doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.07.015, 2003.
- Chaigneau, A., Le Texier, M., Eldin, G., Grados, C., and Pizarro, O.: Vertical structure of mesoscale eddies in the eastern
  South Pacific Ocean: A composite analysis from altimetry and Argo profiling floats, J. Geophys. Res., 116(C11),
  C11025, https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007134, 2011.
- Chakraborty, K., Valsala, V., Gupta, G.V.M. and Sarma, V.V.S.S. : Dominant biological control over upwelling on pCO2
  in sea east of Sri Lanka, J. Geophys. Res., 123, doi:10.1029/2018JG004446, 2018.
- Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Reddy, G. V., Michael, G. S., Ravichandran, M., Gopalkrishana, V. V.,
  Rama Rao, E. P., Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S., and Sanjeevan, V. N.: A new atlas of temperature and salinity for the North
  Indian Ocean, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 121, 559–593, doi:10.1007/s12040-012-0191-9, 2012.
- Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Yanai waves in the western equatorial Indian
  Ocean, J. Geophys. Res.: Oceans, 118, 1556–1570, https://doi.org/0.1002/jgrc.20121, 2013.
- Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Mukherjee, A.: Dynamics of Andaman Sea
  circulation and its role in connecting the equatorial Indian Ocean to the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 122,1–19, doi:
  10.1002/2016JC012300, 2017.
- Chatterjee, A., Kumar, B. P., Prakash, S., and Singh, P.: Annihilation of the Somali upwelling system during summer
  monsoon, Sci. Rep, 9(1), 7598., https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-44099-1, 2019.

- 852 Chaudhuri, A., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., Amol, P., Fernando, V., Kankonkar, A., Michael, G. S., Satelkar, N. P.,
- Khalap, S. T., Tari, A. P., Gaonkar, M. G., Ghatkar, S., and Khedekar, R. R.: Observed variability of the West India
  Coastal Current on the continental slope from 2009–2018, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 129, 57, doi:10.1007/s12040-019-1322-3,
  2020.
- Chavez, F. P. and Toggweiler, J. R.: Physical estimates of global new production: The upwelling contribution, in: C. P.
  Summerhayes, K.-C. Emeis, M. V. Angel, R. L. Smith & B. Zeitzschel (Eds) Upwelling in the ocean: Modern processes
- and ancient records, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 313-320, 1995.
- Chavez, F.P. and Messie, M.: A comparison of eastern boundary upwelling ecosystems, Prog. Oceanogr., 83, 80-93, doi:
  10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.032, 2009.
- Checkley, D. M., and Barth, J. A.: Patterns and processes in the California Current System, Prog. Oceanogr., 83, 49–64,
  doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.028, 2009.
- Chen, G., Wang, D., and Hou, Y.: The features and interannual variability mechanism of mesoscale eddies in the Bay of
  Bengal, Cont. Shelf. Res., 47, 178–185, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2012.07.011, 2012.
- Chen, G., Han, W., Shu, Y., Li, Y., Wang, D., and Xie, Q.: The role of Equatorial Undercurrent in sustaining the Eastern
  Indian Ocean upwelling, Geophys. Res. Lett., 43(12), 6444–6451. <u>https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL069433</u>, 2016.
- Cheng, X., Xie, S.-P., McCreary, J. P., Qi, Y., and Du, Y.: Intraseasonal variability of sea surface height over the Bay of
  Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 118, 1–15, doi: 10.1002/jgrc.20075, 2013.
- Cheng, G., Han, W., Li, Y., and Wang, D.: Interannual variability of equatorial eastern Indian Ocean upwelling: Local versus remote forcing, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 46, 789-807, doi:10.1175/JPO-D-15-0117.1, 2016.
- Clarke, A. J., and X. Liu.: Interannual sea level in the northern and eastern Indian ocean, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 24, 1224–
  1235, doi: 10.1017/1520-0485, 1994.
- Collins, M.: Upwelling on the southeast Madagascan shelf: frequency, extent, and driving mechanisms, MSc thesis,
  Nelson Mandela University, Port Elizabeth, South Africa, 126pp, 2020.
- 1875 Cook, J., Cook, J. R., and Beaglehole, J. C.: The Journals of Captain Cook, Penguin UK, 1999.
- Cossa, O., Pous, S., Penven, P., Capet, X., and Reason, C. J. C.: Modelling cyclonic eddies in the Delagoa Bight region,
  Cont. Shelf. Res., 119, 14-29, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2016.03.006, 2016.
- Cox, M. D.: A numerical study of Somali Current eddies. J. Phys. Oceanogr., 9(2), 311–326, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1979)009%3C0311:ANSOSC%3E2.0.CO;2, 1979.
- Cresswell, G. R., and Golding, T.: Observations of a south-flowing current in the southeastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea
  Res. Part I Oceanogr. Res. Pap., 27(6), 449-466, doi:10.1016/0198-0149(80)90055-2, 1980.
- Cresswell, G., Boland, F., Peterson, J., and Wells, G.: Continental shelf currents near the Abrolhos Islands, Western
  Australia, Mar. Freshw. Res., 40(2), 113-128, doi:10.1071/MF9890113, 1989.
- Cresswell, G., and Peterson, J.: The Leeuwin Current south of Western Australia, Mar. Freshw. Res., 44(2), 285-303,
   doi:10.1071/MF9930285, 1993.

- Cutler, A. N., and Swallow, J. C.: Surface currents of the Indian Ocean (to 25S, 100E), Technical Report 187 (8 pp. and
- 1887 36 charts). Brachnell: Meteorological Office, UK Institute of Oceanographic Science, 1984.
- B88 Darwin, C.: Journal of Researches Into the Natural History and Geology of the Countries Visited During the Voyage of
- HMS 'Beagle' Round the World: Under the Command of Capt. Fitz Roy, R.N, 5th ed., London: Ward, Lock and co., 1889.
- Das, U., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Behara, A.: Formation of the southern Bay of Bengal cold pool, Clim Dyn, 47(5–6),
  2009–2023, https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-015-2947-9, 2018.
- B92 De Ruijter, W.P.M, Leeuwen, P and Lutjeharms, J.: Generation and Evolution of Natal Pulses: Solitary Meanders in the
- 893 Agulhas Current, J. Phys. Oceanography, 29, 3043-3055, doi:<u>https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-</u>
- <u>0485%281999%29029%3C3043%3AGAEONP%3E2.0.CO%3B2</u>, 1999.
- De Ruijter, W.P.M., Ridderinkhof, H., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., Schouten, M.W., and Veth, C.: Observations of the flow in the
   Mozambique Channel, Geophys. Res. Lett., 29 (10), 1502, doi:10.1029/2001GL013714, 2002.
- Delman, A. S., Sprintall, J., McClean, J. L., and Talley, L. D.: Anomalous Java cooling at the initiation of positive Indian
  Ocean Dipole events, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 5805–5824, doi:10.1002/2016JC011635, 2016.
- B99 Delman, A. S., McClean, J. L., Sprintall, J., Talley, L. D., and Bryan, F. O.: Process-specific contributions to anomalous
- Java mixed layer cooling during positive IOD events, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 123, 4153–4176,
  doi:/10.1029/2017JC013749, 2018.
- Deutsch, C., Sarmiento, J. L., Sigman, D. M., Gruber, N., and Dunne, J. P.: Spatial coupling of nitrogen inputs and losses in the ocean, Nature, 445(7124), 163–167, doi: 10.1038/nature05392, 2007.
- Dilmahamod, A. : Links between the Seychelles-Chagos thermocline ridge and large scale climate modes and primary
   productivity; and the annual cycle of chlorophyll-a, University of Cape Town, 2014.
- Dilmahamod, A. F., Hermes, J. C., and Reason, C. J. C. : Chlorophyll-a variability in the Seychelles–Chagos Thermocline
   Ridge: Analysis of a coupled biophysical model. J. Mar. Syst., 154, 220–232,
   <u>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2015.10.011</u>, 2016.
- Dilmahamod, A. F., Penven, P., Aguiar-González, B., Reason, C. J. C., and Hermes, J. C.: A new definition of the SouthEast Madagascar Bloom and analysis of its variability, J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 124, doi:10.1029/2018JC014582, 2019.
- DiMarco, S.F., Chapman, P., and Nowlin, W.D. Jr.: Satellite observations of upwelling on the continental shelf south of
   Madagascar, Geophys. Res. Lett., 27(24), 3965-3968, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.021, 2000.
- Domingues, C. M., Maltrud, M. E., Wijffels, S. E., Church, J. A., and Tomczak, M.: Simulated Lagrangian pathways
- between the Leeuwin Current System and the upper-ocean circulation of the southeast Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part
  II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 797-817, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.003, 2007.
- 1915 II: 10p. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 797-817, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.003, 2007.
- Dong, C., McWilliams, J., Liu, Y. And Chen, D.: Global heat and salt transports by eddy movement, *Nat Commun.*, 5, 3294, https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms4294, 2014.
- Donners, J., and Drijfhout, S. S.: The Lagrangian view of South Atlantic interocean exchange in a global ocean model
- compared with inverse model results., J. Phys. Oceanogr. 34, 1019–1035, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(2004)034%3C1019:TLVOSA%3E2.0.CO;2, 2004.

- Du, Y., Qu, T., Meyers, G., Masumoto, Y., and Sasaki, H.: Seasonal heat budget in the mixed layer of the southeastern
- tropical Indian Ocean in a high-resolution ocean general circulation model, J. Geophys. Res., 110, C04012,
   doi:10.1029/2004JC002845, 2005.
- Du, Y., Qu, T., Meyers, and Meyers, G.: Interannual variability of sea surface temperature off Java and Sumatra in a global GCM, J. Climate, 21, 2451-2465, doi:10.1175/2007JCLI1753.1, 2008.
- 1926 Dufois, F., Hardman-Mountford, N. J., Greenwood, J., Richardson, A. J., Feng, M., Herbette, S., and Matear, R.: Impact
- of eddies on surface chlorophyll in the South Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 119(11), 8061-8077,
  doi:10.1002/2014jc010164, 2014.
- Düing, W., Molinari, R., and Swallow, J.: Somali Current: Evolution of surface flow. Science, 209(4456), 588–590, 10.1126/science.209.4456.588-a, 1980.
- Durand, F., Shankar, D., Birol, F. and Shenoi, S. S.C.: Spatiotemporal structure of the East India Coastal Current from satellite altimetry; J. Geophys. Res., 114, CO2013, doi: 10.1029/2008JC004807, 2009.
- Ehlert, C., Frank, M., Haley, B. A., Böniger, U., De Deckker, P., and Gingele, F. X.: Current transport versus continental
- 934 inputs in the eastern Indian Ocean: Radiogenic isotope signatures of clay size sediments, Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst.,
- 1935 12, Q06017, doi:10.1029/2011GC003544, 2011.
- Ekman, V. W.: On the influence of the Earth's rotation on ocean currents, Arch. Math. Astron. Phys., 2, 1-52, 1905.
- Elipot, S., and Beal, L. M.: Characteristics, Energetics, and Origins of Agulhas Current Meanders and their Limited Influence on Ring Shedding, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 45, 2294-2314,doi:10.1175/JPO-D-14-0254.1, 2015.
- Falkowski, P., Ziemann, D., Kolber, Z. and Beinfang, P. K.:Role of eddy pumping in enhancing primary production in the ocean, *Nature*, 352, 55–58, https://doi.org/10.1038/352055a0, 1991.
- Feng, M., Meyers, G., Pearce, A., and Wijffels, S.: Annual and interannual variations of the Leeuwin Current at 32°S, J.
  Geophys. Res. Oceans, 108(C11), doi:10.1029/2002jc001763, 2003.
- 1943 Feng, M., Majewski, L. J., Fandry, C. B., and Waite, A. M: Characteristics of two counter-rotating eddies in the Leeuwin
- Current system off the Western Australian coast, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 961-980.
  doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.11.022, 2007.
- Feng, M., Waite, A., and Thompson, P.: Climate variability and ocean production in the Leeuwin Current system off the west coast of Western Australia, J R Soc West Aus, 92, 67-82, 2009.
- Feng, M., Slawinski, D., Beckley, L. E., and Keesing, J. K.: Retention and dispersal of shelf waters influenced by
  interactions of ocean boundary current and coastal geography, Mar. Freshw. Res., 61(11), 1259-1267,
  doi:10.1071/MF09275, 2010.
- Findlater, J.: A major low-level air current near the Indian Ocean during the northern summer, Q J R Meteorol Soc,
  95(404), 362–380, https://doi.org/10.1002/qj.49709540409, 1969.
- Fischer, J., F. Schott, and Stramma, L.: Currents and transports of the Great Whirl-Socotra Gyre system during the summer monsoon, August 1993, J. Geophys. Res., 101, 3573–3587, https://doi.org/10.1029/95JC03617, 1996.

- Fletcher, W., Tregonning, R., and Sant, G.: Interseasonal variation in the transport of pilchard eggs and larvae off southern
   Western Australia, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 111(3), 209-224, doi:10.3354/meps111209, 1994.
- Foltz, G. R., Vialard, J., Praveen Kumar, B., and McPhaden, M. J.: Seasonal Mixed Layer Heat Balance of the Southwestern Tropical Indian Ocean, J. Clim, 23(4), 947–965. https://doi.org/10.1175/2009JCLI3268.1, 2010.
- Fonteneau, A., Lucas, V., Tew Kai, E., Delgado, A. and Demarcq, H.: Mesoscale exploitation of a major tuna concentration in the Indian Ocean, http://dx.doi.org/10.1051/alr:2008028. 21. 10.1051/alr:2008028, 2008.
- 961 Francis, P. A., Jithin, A. K., Chatterjee, A., Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Vinayachandran, P. N. and Ramakrishna, S. S.
- V. S.: Structure and dynamics of undercurrents in the western boundary current of the Bay of Bengal, Ocean Dyn., 70,
- 963 387-404, doi: doi.org/10.1007/s10236-019-01340-9, 2020.
- Furnas, M.: Intra-seasonal and inter-annual variations in phytoplankton biomass, primary production and bacterial
  production at North West Cape, Western Australia: Links to the 1997–1998 El Niño event, Cont Shelf Res., 27(7), 958966 980, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2007.01.002, 2007.
- Fye, P.M.: The International Indian Ocean Expedition, The Distinguished Lecture Series 1964-1965, sponsored by
   Science Bureau, Washington Board of Trade, presented at Georgetown University, 27 January 1965,
- doi:10.1575/1912/5872, 1965.
- Gadgil, S., Vinayachandran, P. N., Francis, P. A., and Gadgil, S.: Extremes of the Indian summer monsoon rainfall, ENSO
  and equatorial Indian Ocean oscillation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 31(12), L12213, https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL019733,
  2004.
- Gandhi, N., Singh, A., Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Raman, M., Sheshshayee, M., and Shetye, S.: First direct measurements
  of N<sub>2</sub> fixation during a Trichodesmium bloom in the eastern Arabian Sea, Glob. Biogeochem. Cycles, 25, GB4014,
  doi:10.1029/2010GB003970, 2011.
- Gao, C., Fu, M., Song, H., Wang, L., Wei, Q., Sun, P., Liu, L. and Zhang, X.: Phytoplankton pigment pattern in the
  subsurface chlorophyll maximum in the South Java coastal upwelling system, Indonesia, Acta Oceanol. Sin., 37, 97-106,
  doi: 10.1007/s13131-018-1342-x, 2018.
- Garçon, V., B. Dewitte, I. Montes, and K. Goubanova, Land-sea-atmosphere interactions exacerbating ocean
   deoxygenation in Eastern Boundary Upwelling Systems (EBUS), In IUCN Report Ocean Deoxygenation: Everyone's
   Problem., (<u>https://portals.iucn.org/library/sites/library/files/</u> documents/03.4%20DEOX.pdf), 2019.
- Gaughan, D., Fletcher, W., and White, K.: Growth rate of larval *Sardinops sagax* from ecosystems with different levels of
   productivity, Mar. Biol, 139(5), 831-837, doi:10.1007/s002270100637, 2001a.
- Gaughan, D., White, K., and Fletcher, W.: The links between functionally distinct adult assemblages of *Sardinops sagax:*larval advection across management boundaries, ICES J. Mar. Sci., 58(3), 597-606, doi:10.1006/jmsc.2001.1061, 2001b.
- Gauns, M., Madhupratap, M., Ramaiah, N., Jyothibabu, R., Fernandes, V., Paul, J. T. and Prasanna Kumar, S.:
- 987 Comparative accounts of biological productivity characteristics and estimates of carbon fluxes in the Arabian Sea and the
- Bay of Bengal, Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Topical Stud. Oceanogr, 52, 2003-2017, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2005.05.009, 2005.
- Guastella, L. A., Roberts, M. J.: Dynamics and role of the Durban cyclonic eddy in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight
  ecosystem, African Journal of Marine Science, 38:sup1, S23-S42, DOI: <u>10.2989/1814232X.2016.1159982</u>, 2006.

- 991 Gentilli, J.: Thermal anomalies in the eastern Indian Ocean, Nat. Phys. Sci., 238(84), 93-95, doi:10.1038/physci238093a0, 992 1972.
- 993 George, J.V., Nuncio, M, Racheal, C., Anilkumar, N., Sharon, B. N., Shramik, M. P., Sini P., Denny, P. A., Krishnan,
- 994 K.P., and Achuthankutty, C.T.: Role of physical processes in chlorophyll distribution in the western tropical Indian Ocean. 995 J. Mar. Syst., Volumes 113–114, 2013.
- 996 George, J. V., Vinayachandran, P. N., Vijith, V., Thushara, V., Nayak, A. A., Pargaonkar, S. M., Amol, P., Vijaykumar,
- 997 K., & Matthews, A. J.: Mechanisms of Barrier Laver Formation and Erosion from In Situ Observations in the Bay of
- 998 Bengal, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 49(5), 1183-1200, DOI: 10.1175/JPO-D-18-0204.12019.
- 999
- 2000 Gersbach, G. H., Pattiaratchi, C. B., Ivey, G. N., and Cresswell, G. R.: Upwelling on the south-west coast of Australia-2001 source of the Capes Current?. Cont Shelf Res., 19(3), 363-400, doi:10.1016/S0278-4343(98)00088-0, 1999.
- 2002 Godfrey, J., and Ridgway, K.: The large-scale environment of the poleward-flowing Leeuwin Current, Western Australia: 2003 longshore steric height gradients, wind stresses and geostrophic flow, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 15(5), 481-495, 2004 doi:10.1175/1520-0485(1985)015<0481:TLSEOT>2.0.CO;2, 1985.
- 2005 Goes, J. I., Thoppil, P. G., Gomes, H. D. and Fasullo, J.T.: Warming of the Eurasian landmass is making the Arabian Sea 2006 more productive, Science, 308, 545-547, 2005.
- 2007 Goes, J. I., Tian, H., Gomes, H. D. R., Anderson, O. R., Al-Hashmi, K., deRada, S., Luo, H., Al-Kharusi, L., Al-Azri, A., 2008 and Martinson, D. G.: Ecosystem state change in the Arabian Sea fuelled by the recent loss of snow over the Himalayan-2009 Tibetan Plateau region, Sci. Rep, 10, 7422, 2020.
- 2010 Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., and Saino, T.: Influence of physical processes and freshwater discharge on the seasonality of 2011 phytoplankton regime in the Bay of Bengal, Cont. Shelf Res., 20, 313-330, doi: 10.1016/S0278-4343(99)00072-2, 2000.
- 2012 Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., Matondkar, S. P., Parab, S. G., Al-Azri, A. R., and Thoppil, P. G.: Blooms of Noctiluca 2013 *miliaris* in the Arabian Sea—An in situ and satellite study, Deep Sea Res, Part I Oceanogr., 55(6), 751–765.
- 2014 doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2008.03.003, 2008.
- 2015 Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., Matondkar, S. P., Buskey, E. J., Basu, S., Parab, S., and Thoppil, P.: Massive outbreaks of
- 2016 Noctiluca scintillans blooms in the Arabian Sea due to spread of hypoxia, Nat. Commun., 5, 4862, doi: 2017 10.1038/ncomms5862, 2014.
- 2018 Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Sastry, J. S.: Hydrography of the western Bay of Bengal during SW monsoon, Indian J. Mar. 2019 Sci., 14,62-65, 1984.
- 2020 Goschen, W. S., Bornman, T. G., Deyzel, S., and Schumann, E. H.: Coastal upwelling on the far eastern Agulhas Bank 2021 associated with large meanders in the Agulhas Current, Cont. Shelf Res., 101, 34-46, 2015.
- 2022 Govender, A. and Rabede P. V.: Status report: seventy four (Polysteganus undulosus), In Status Reports for Key Linefish 2023 Species, Mann, B. O. (Ed.). Spec. Publ. oceanogr. Res. Inst. S. Afr. 7,174-175, 2000.
- 2024 Griffin, D. A., Wilkin, J. L., Chubb, C. F., Pearce, A. F., and Caputi, N.: Ocean currents and the larval phase of Australian 2025 western rock lobster, Panulirus cygnus, Mar. Freshw. Res., 52(8), 1187-1199, doi:10.1071/MF01181, 2001.

- 2026 Griffiths, M. H. and Hecht, T.: On the life-history of *Atractoscion aequidens*, a migratory sciaenid off the east coast of southern Africa, J. Fish Bioi., 47, 962-985, 1995.
- Griffiths, C. L., Robinson, T. B., Lange, L., and Mead, A.: Marine biodiversity in South Africa: an evaluation of current
   states of knowledge, Plos one, 5(8):e12008, doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0012008, 2010.
- Grumet, N. S., Abram, N. J., Beck, J. W., Dunbar, R. B., Gagan, M. K., Guilderson, T. P., Hantoro, W. S. and Suwargadi,
  B. W.: Coral radiocarbon records of Indian Ocean water mass mixing and wind-induced upwelling along the coast of
- 2032 Sumatra, Indonesia, J. Geophys. Res., 109, C05003, doi:10.1029/2003JC002087, 2004.
- 2033 Guastella, L. A., Roberts, M. J.: Dynamics and role of the Durban cyclonic eddy in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight ecosystem,
   2034 Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 38:sup1, S23-S42, doi: 10.2989/1814232X.2016.1159982, 2016.
- 2035 Gupta, G. V. M., Sudheesh, V., Sudharma, K., Saravanane, N., Dhanya, V., Dhanya, K., Lakshmi, G., Sudhakar, M., and
- 2036 Naqvi, S.: Evolution to decay of upwelling and associated biogeochemistry over the southeastern Arabian Sea shelf, J.
- 2037 Geophys. Res. Biogeosci., 121(1), 159–175, doi: 10.1002/2015JG003163, 2016.
- 2038 Gupta, G.V.M., Jyothibabu, R., Ramu, Ch.V., Yudhistir Reddy, A., Balachandran, K.K., Sudheesh, V., Sanjeev Kumar,
- 2039 Chari, N.V.H.K., Kausar F. B., Prachi H. M., Reddy, B., Vijayan, A.K.: The world's largest coastal deoxygenation zone is
- 2040 not anthropogenically driven. *Environmental Research Letters*, 16: 054009, doi: 10.1088/1748-9326/abe9eb, 2021.
- Halm, H., Lam, P., Ferdelman, T.G., Lavik, G., Dittmar, T., Laroche, J., D'Hondt, S., and Kuypers, M.M.: Heterotrophic
  organisms dominate nitrogen fixation in the South Pacific Gyre, ISME J., 6(6), 1238-49, doi:10.1038/ismej.2011.182,
  2012.
- Halo, I., Backeberg, B., Penven, P., Ansorge, I., Reason, C., and Ullgren, J.E.: Eddy properties in the Mozambique
  Channel: A comparison between observations and two numerical ocean circulation models, Deep-Sea Res. II, 100, 38–53,
  doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.015, 2014.
- Halo, I., Sagero, P., Manyilizu, M., and Shigalla M.: Biophysical modelling of the coastal upwelling variability and
- 2048 circulation along the Tanzanian and Kenyan coasts. WIO, Journal of Marine Science, 1, 43-61,
- 2049 doi:10.4314/wiojms.si2020.1.5, 2020.
- Hanson, C. E., Pattiaratchi, C. B., and Waite, A. M.: Seasonal production regimes off south-western Australia: influence
  of the Capes and Leeuwin Currents on phytoplankton dynamics, Mar. Freshw. Res., 56(7), 1011-1026,
  doi:10.1071/MF04288, 2005.
- Hanson, C. E., Pesant, S., Waite, A. M., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Assessing the magnitude and significance of deep
  chlorophyll maxima of the coastal eastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 884-901,
  doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.08.021, 2007a.
- Hanson, C. E., Waite, A. M., Thompson, P. A., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Phytoplankton community structure and nitrogen nutrition in Leeuwin Current and coastal waters off the Gascoyne region of Western Australia, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top.
  Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8-10), 902-924, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.002, 2007b.
- Hanson, C., and McKinnon, A.: Pelagic ecology of the Ningaloo region, Western Australia: influence of the Leeuwin
   Current, J R Soc West Aus, 92, 129-138, 2009.
- Harris, T. F. W., and van Foreest, D.: The Agulhas Current in March 1969, Deep Sea Res., 25(6), 549-550,
   https://doi.org/10.1016/0146-6291(78)90643-4, 1978.

- Haugen, V. E., Johannessen, O. M., and Evensen, G.: Mesoscale modeling study of the oceanographic conditions off the
   southwest coast of India, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 111, 321–337, doi:10.1007/BF02701978, 2002.
- 2065 Heileman, S. and Scott, L.E.P.: The Somali coastal current large marine ecosystem. In: Sherman, K., Hempel, G. (Eds.),
- 2066 The UNEP Large Marine Ecosystem Report: A perspective on changing conditions in LMEs of the World's regional seas,
- 2067 UNEP, United States, 2008.
- Heip C.H.R., Hemminga, M.A., and de Bie, M.J.M. (Eds): Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya, Cruise reports
   Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 122 pp, 1995.
- Helly, J. J., and Levi, L. A.: Global distribution of naturally occurring marine hypoxia on continental margins, *Deep Sea Res., Part I, 51*,1159–1168, 2004.
- Hermes, J. C., & Reason, C. J. C. : Annual cycle of the South Indian Ocean (Seychelles-Chagos) thermocline ridge in a
   regional ocean model, J. Geophys. Res., 113(C4), C04035, https://doi.org/10.1029/2007JC004363, 2008.
- Hitchcock, G. L., and Olson, D.: NE and SW monsoon conditions along the Somali coast during 1987, In B. N. Desai
   (Ed.), Oceanography of the Indian Ocean, New Delhi: Oxford & IBH, 1992.
- Hitchcock, G.L., Key, E., and Masters, J.: The fate of upwelled waters in the Great Whirl, August 1995, Deep-Sea Res. II
   47, 1605–1621, 2000.
- Ho, C.-R., Zheng, Q., and Kuo, N.-J.: SeaWiFs observations of upwelling south of Madagascar: long-term variability and
   interaction with East Madagascar Current, Deep-Sea Res. II Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 51(1), 59–67,
- 2080 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.05.001, 2004.
- Holliday, D., Beckley, L. E., and Olivar, M. P.: Incorporation of larval fishes into a developing anti-cyclonic eddy of the
   Leeuwin Current off south-western Australia, J. Plankton Res., 33(11), 1696-1708, doi:10.1093/plankt/fbr064, 2011.
- Holliday, D., Beckley, L. E., Millar, N., Olivar, M. P., Slawinski, D., Feng, M., and Thompson, P. A.: Larval fish
  assemblages and particle back-tracking define latitudinal and cross-shelf variability in an eastern Indian Ocean boundary
  current, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 460, 127-144, doi:10.3354/meps09730, 2012.
- Holloway, P. E., and Nye, H.: Leeuwin Current and wind distributions on the southern part of the Australian North West
  Shelf between January 1982 and July 1983, Australian Journal of Mar. Freshw. Res., 36(2), 123-137,
- 2088 doi:10.1071/MF9850123, 1985.
- 1089 Hood, R.R., Bange, H.W., Beal, L., Beckley, L.E., Burkill, P., Cowie, G.L., D'Adamo, N., Ganssen, G., Hendon, H.,
- 2090 Hermes, J., Honda, M., McPhaden, M., Roberts, M., Singh, S., Urban, E., Yu, W.: Science Plan of the Second
- 2091 International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE-2): A Basin-Wide Research Program, Scientific Committee on Oceanic
- 2092 Research, Newark, Delaware, USA, 2015.
- Hood, R. R., Beckley, L. E., and Wiggert, J. D.: Biogeochemical and ecological impacts of boundary currents in the
   Indian Ocean, Prog. Oceanogr., 156, 290-325, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2017.04.011, 2017.
- Horii, T., Hase, H., Ueki, I., and Masumoto, Y.: Oceanic precondition and evolution of the 2006 Indian Ocean dipole,
   Geophys. Res. Lett., 35, L03607, doi:10.1029/2007GL032464, 2008.

- Horii, T., Ueki, I., Syamsudin, F., Sofian, I., and Ando, K.: Intraseasonal coastal upwelling signal along the southern coast
  of Java observed using Indonesian tidal station data, J. Geophys. Res., 121, 2690-2708, doi: 10.1002/2015JC010886,
  2016.
- Horii, T., Ueki, I., and Ando, K.: Coastal upwelling events along the southern coast of Java during the 2008 positive
   Indian Ocean Dipole, J. Oceanogr., 74, 499–508, doi:10.1007/s10872-018-0475-z, 2018.
- Huggett, J. A.: Mesoscale distribution and community composition of zooplankton in the Mozambique Channel., Deep-Sea
   Res. II, 100, 119–135, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.021, 2014.
- Hutchings, L. Beckley, L. L. E., Griffiths, M. H., Roberts, M. J., Sundby, S., van der Lingen, C. : Spawning on the edge:
  spawning grounds and nursery areas around the southern African coastline, Mar. Freshw. Res. 53, 307–318,
  doi:10.1071/MF01147, 2002.
- 2107 Hutchings, L., [van der Lingen], C., Shannon, L., Crawford, R., Verheye, H., Bartholomae, C., [van der Plas], A., Louw,
- 2108 D., Kreiner, A., Ostrowski, M., Fidel, Q., Barlow, R., Lamont, T., Coetzee, J., Shillington, F., Veitch, J., Currie, J., and
- 2109 Monteiro, P.: The Benguela Current: An ecosystem of four components, Prog. Oceanogr., 83, 15–32,
- 2110 doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.046, 2009.
- 111 IMR.: Cruise Report No. 1 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
   resources off the coast of Mozambique, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1977a.
- IMR.: Cruise Report No. 2 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
   resources off the coast of Mozambique, October–December 1977.,Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978a.
- IMR.: Cruise Report No. 3 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
   resources off the coast of Mozambique, January–March 1978, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978b.
- 117 IMR.: Cruise Report No. 4 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish
   118 resources off the coast of Mozambique, April–June 1978, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978c.
- 119 IMR.: Fisheries resources survey, Madagascar. Cruise Report R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, 16–28 June 1983, Institute of
   120 Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1983a.
- Iskandar, I., Tozuka, T., Sasaki, H., Masumoto, Y., and Yamagata, T.: Intraseasonal variations of surface and subsurface
   currents off Java as simulated in a high-resolution ocean general circulation model, J. Geophys. Res., 111, C12015,
- 2123 doi:10.1029/2006JC003486, 2006.
- Iskandar, I., Rao, S. A., and Tozuka, T.: Chlorophyll-*a* bloom along the southern coasts of Java and Sumatra during 2006,
   Int. J. Remote Sens., 30, 663-671, doi:10.1080/01431160802372309, 2009.
- Iskandar, I., Sari, Q. W, Setiabudidaya, D., Yustian I., and Monger B.: The distribution and variability of chlorophyll-a
  bloom in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean using Empirical Orthogonal Function analysis, Biodiversitas, 18, 1546128 1555, doi: 10.13057/biodiv/d180433, 2017.
- Izumo, T., Montegut, C. D., Luo, J. J., Behera, S. K., Masson, S., and Yamagata, T.: The role of the western Arabian
   Sea upwelling in Indian monsoon rainfall variability, J. Clim., 21(21), 5603 5623, doi:10.1175/2008JCLI2158.1, 2008.
- Jackson, J. M., Rainville, L., Roberts, M. J., McQuaid, C. D., and Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Mesoscale bio-physical
- interactions between the Agulhas Current and the Agulhas Bank, South Africa, Cont. Shelf Res., 49, 10–24, doi:10.1016/
   j.csr.2012.09.005, 2012.

- 2134 Jacobs, Z. L., Jebri, F., Raitsos, D. E., Popova, E., Srokosz, M., Painter, S. C., Nencioli, F., Roberts, M., Kamau, J.,
- Palmer, M., and Wihsgott, J.: Shelf-break upwelling and productivity over the North Kenya Banks: The importance of large-scale ocean dynamics, J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 125, e2019JC015519, https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015519,
- 2137 2020.
- 2138 Jochum, J. and Murtugudde, R.: Internal variability of Indian Ocean SST, J. Climate, 18, 3726–3738,
- 2139 https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI3488.1, 2005.
- 2140 Johannes, R., Pearce, A., Wiebe, W., Crossland, C., Rimmer, D., Smith, D., and Manning, C.: Nutrient characteristics of
- 2141 well-mixed coastal waters off Perth, Western Australia, Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci., 39(3), 273-285,
  - 2142 doi:10.1006/ecss.1994.1064, 1994.
  - Johannessen, O. M., Subbaraju, G. V., and Blindheim, J.: Seasonal variations of the oceanographic conditions off the
     southwest coast of India during 1971-1975, Fisk Dir Skr Ser Hav Unders, 18, 247–261, 1981.
  - 2145 Johnsen, E., Krakstad, J., Ostrowski, M., Serigstad, B., Strømme, T., Alvheim, O., Olsen, M., Zaera, D., André, E., Dias,
- 2146 N., Sousa, L., Sousa, B., Malauene, B., and Abdula, S.: Surveys of the living marine resources of Mozambique:
- 2147 Ecosystem survey and special studies, 27 September–21 December 2007, Report No. 8/2007–2007409, Institute of Marine
- 2148 Research, Bergen, Norway, 2007.
- 2149 Jorge da Silva, A., Mubango, A., and Sætre, R.: Information on oceanographic cruises in the Mozambique Channel,
- Revista de Investigação Pesquira, 2, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, República Popular de
   Moçambique, 89, 1981.
- 2152 Jyothibabu, R., Vinayachandran, P. N., Madhu, N. V., Robin, R. S., Karnan, C., Jagadeesan, L., and Anjusha, A. :
- 2153 Phytoplankton size structure in the southern Bay of Bengal modified by the Summer Monsoon Current and associated
- eddies: Implications on the vertical biogenic flux, J. Mar. Syst., 143, 98–119,
- 2155 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.018, 2015.
- 2156 Kampf, J. and Chapman, P: Upwelling Systems of the World, 10.1007/978-3-319-42524-5, 2016.
- Kämpf, J. and Kavi, A.: SST variability in the eastern intertropical Indian Ocean On the search for trigger mechanisms
   of IOD events, Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 166, 64-74, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.11.010, 2019.
- Kanuri, V. V., Rao, G.D., Munnooru, K., Sura, A., Patra, S., Vinjamuri, R. R., and Karr. R.: Scales and drivers of seasonal
   *p*CO<sub>2</sub> dynamics and net ecosystem exchange along the coastal waters of southeastern Arabian Sea, *Marine poll. Bull.*,
- 2161 121(1-2), 372-380, 2017.
- Kawamiya, M.: Mechanism of offshore nutrient supply in the western Arabian Sea, J. Mar. Res., 59, 675–696,
   https://doi.org/10.1357/002224001762674890, 2001.
- Keen, T.R., Kindle, J.C., and Young, D.K.: The interaction of southwest monsoon upwelling, advection and primary
   production in the northwest Arabian Sea, J. Mar. Syst., 13, 61–82, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963(97)00003-1, 1997.
- Kindle, J. C., Arnone, R., and Smedstad, O. M.: On the generation of coastal filaments during the Spring Intermonsoon,
   EOS, Transactions of the AGU, 83, 37, 2002.
- 2168 Kolasinski, J., Kaehler, S., and Jaquemet, S.: Distribution and sources of particulate organic matter in a mesoscale eddy
- dipole in the Mozambique Channel (south-western Indian Ocean): Insight from C and N stable isotopes, J. Mar. Syst., 96–
- 2170 97, 122–131, doi: 10.1016/j.jmarsys.2012.02.015, 2012.

- 2171 Koné, V., Aumont, O., Lévy, and M., Resplandy, L.: Physical and biogeochemical controls of the phytoplankton seasonal
- 2172 cycle in the Indian Ocean: a modeling study. In: Indian Ocean Biogeochemical Processes and Ecological Variability.
- 2173 AGU, 147–166, doi.org/10.1029/2008GM000700, 2009.
- Koné, V., Lett, C., and Fréon, P.,: Modelling the effect of food availability on recruitment success of Cape anchovy
   ichthyoplankton in the southern Benguela upwelling system, Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 35 (2), 151-161, 2013.
- 2176 Koslow, J.A., Pesant, S., Feng, M., Pearce, A., Fearns, P., Moore, T., Matear, R., and Waite, A.: The effect of the Leeuwin
- 2177 Current on phytoplankton biomass and production off Southwestern Australia, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 113(C7),
   2178 doi:10.1029/2007JC004102, 2008.
- 2179 Krakstad, J.-O., Mehl, S., Roman, R., Escobar-Porras, J., Stapley, J., Flynn, B., Olsen, M., and Beck, I.: Cruise Reports Dr
- Fridtjof Nansen, East Madagascar Current Ecosystem Survey ASCLME/FAO 2008 Cruise 1, 24 August–1 October 2008,
   Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2008.
- Kromkamp, J., de Bie, M., Goosen, N., Peene, J., van Rijswijk, P., Sinke, J., and Duineveld, G.C.A.: Primary production
  by phytoplankton along the Kenyan coast during the SE monsoon and November intermonsoon 1992, and the occurrence
  of *Trichodesmium*, Deep-Sea Res., Part 2, Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 44(6-7), 1195-1212, doi:10.1016/S0967-0645(97)000155, 1997.
- Krug, M., and Tournadre, J.: Satellite observations of an annual cycle in the Agulhas Current, Geophys. Res. Lett., 39(15),
   https://doi.org/10.1029/2012GL052335, 2012.
- Krug, M., Tournadre, J., and Dufois, F.: Interactions between the Agulhas Current and the eastern margin of the Agulhas
   Bank, Cont. Shelf Res., 81, 67–79, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2014.02.020, 2014.
- Krug, M., Swart, S., and Gula, J.: Submesoscale cyclones in the Agulhas current, Geophys. Res. Lett., 44(1), 346–354,
   https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL071006, 2017.
- Kumar, S., Ramesh, R., Sardesai, S., Sheshshayee, M.S.: High new production in the Bay of Bengal: possible causes and
   implications, Geophys. Res. Lett. 31(L18304), doi:10.1029/2004GL021005, 2004.
- Kumar, P. K, Singh, A., Ramesh, R., and Nallathambi, T.: N<sub>2</sub> Fixation in the Eastern Arabian Sea: Probable Role of
   Heterotrophic Diazotrophs, Mar. Chem., 4, 80, doi:10.3389/fmars.2017.00080, 2017.
- Kurian, J., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Mechanisms of formation of the Arabian Sea mini warm pool in a high-resolution
   Ocean General Circulation Model, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 112, C05009, doi:10.1029/2006JC003631, 2007.
- Kyewalyanga, M.S., Naik, R., Hegde, S., Raman, M., Barlow, R., and Roberts, M.: Phytoplankton biomass and primary
   production in Delagoa Bight Mozambique: Application of remote sensing, Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci., 74, 429-436, doi:
   10.1016/j.ecss.2007.04.027, 2007.
- L'evy, M., Andr'e., J.-M., Shankar, D., Durand, F. and Shenoi, S.S.C.: A quantitative method for describing the seasonal cycles of surface chlorophyll in the Indian Ocean, SPEproceedings, Remote Sensing of the Marine Environment, R. J.
- 203 Frouin, V. K.Agarwal, H. Kawamura, S. Nayak, D. Pan; Eds., 6406, 640611, 8pp, 2006.
- La Fond, E. C.: On upwelling and sinking off the east coast of India, Andhra Univ. Mem. Oceanogr., 1, 117–121, 1954.
- La Fond, E. C.: Oceanographic studies in the Bay of Bengal, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci., 46, 1–46, doi:10.1007/BF03052445,
   1957.

- La Fond, E. C.: On the circulation of the surface layers on the east coast of India, Andhra Univ. Mem. Oceanogr., 2, 1–11,
   1958.
- La Fond, E. C: Sea surface features and internal waves in the sea, Indian J. Meterol. Geophys., 10, 415–419, https://metnet.imd.gov.in/mausamdocs/51047.pdf, 1959.
- Lakshmi, R. S., Chatterjee, A., Prakash, S., and Mathew, T.: Biophysical Interactions in Driving the Summer Monsoon
  Chlorophyll Bloom Off the Somalia Coast, J.Geophys. Res. Oceans, *125*(3), https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015549,
  2020.
- Lamont, T., Roberts, M. J., Barlow, R. G., Morris, T., and van den Berg, M. A.: Circulation patterns in the Delagoa Bight,
   Mozambique, and the influence of deep ocean eddies, Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 32 (3), 553–562, doi:
- 2216 10.2989/1814232X.2010.538147, 2010.
- Lamont, T., Barlow, R., Morris, T., and van den Berg, M.: Characterisation of mesoscale features and phytoplankton
   variability in the Mozambique Channel, Deep-Sea Res. II 100, 94–105, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.019, 2014.
- Landolfi, A., Koeve, W., Dietze, H., Kähler, P., and Oschlies, A.: A new perspective on environmental controls of marine
   nitrogen fixation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 42, 4482–4489, doi:10.1002/2015GL063756, 2015.
- 221 Langlois, R., Großkopf, T., Mills, M., Takeda, S., and LaRoche, J.: Widespread distribution and expression of gamma A
- 222 (UMB), an uncultured, diazotrophic, γ-proteobacterial nifH phylotype, PLoS One, 10(6),
- 2223 doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0128912, 2015.
- Leber, G. M., and Beal, L. M.: Local water mass modifications by a solitary meander in the Agulhas Current, J. Geophys.
   Res. : Oceans, 120(6), 4503–4515. <u>https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC010863, 2015.</u>
- Leber, G. M., Beal, L. M., and Elipot, S.: Wind and Current Forcing Combine to Drive Strong Upwelling in the Agulhas
   Current, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 47(1), 123–134, https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-16-0079.1, 2017.
- Lee, T. : Decadal weakening of the shallow overturning circulation in the South Indian Ocean, Geophys. Res. Lett.,
   31(18), L18305. https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL020884, 2004.
- Leetma, A., Quadfasel, D. R., and Wilson, D.: Development of the flow field during the onset of the Somali current, 1979,
  J. Phys. Oceanogr., 12, 1325–1342, doi:10.1175/1520-0485, 1982.
- Lenanton, R., Caputi, N., Kangas, M., and Craine, M.: The ongoing influence of the Leeuwin Current on economically
   important fish and invertebrates off temperate Western Australia has it changed?, J R Soc West Aus, 92, 111 128, 2009.
- Lévy, M., Shankar, D., André, J., Shenoi, S., Durand, F., and de Boyer Montégut, C.: Basin-wide seasonal evolution of the
   Indian Ocean's phytoplankton blooms, J. Geophys. Res. :Oceans, doi:112(C12),10.1029/2007JC004090, 2007.
- 236 Lighthill, M. J.: Dynamic response of the Indian Ocean to onset of the Southwest Monsoon, Philosophical Transactions of
- the Royal Society of London Series A, Mathematical and Physical Sciences, 265(1159), 45–92,
  - 2238 https://doi.org/10.1098/rsta.1969.0040, 1969.
  - 239 Locarnini, R. A., Mishonov, A. V., Baranova, O. K., Boyer, T. P., Zweng, M. M., Garcia, H. E., Reagan, J. R., Seidov, D.,
  - Weathers, K., Paver, C. R. and Smolyar, I.: World Ocean Atlas 2018, Volume 1: Temperature, A. Mishonov Technical
  - 2241 Ed.; NOAA Atlas NESDIS 81, 52, 2018.

- Longhurst, A. R., and Wooster, W. S.: Abundance of oil sardine (*Sardinella longiceps*) and upwelling on the southwest coast of India, Can. J. Fish. Aquat., 47, 2407–2419, doi:10.1139/f90-268, 1990.
- Longhurst, A.: A major seasonal phytoplankton bloom in the Madagascar Basin, Deep-Sea Res. Part I: Oceanographic
   Research Papers, 48(11), 2413–2422, doi: 10.1016/S0967-0637(01)00024-3, 2001.
- Lotliker, A. A., Baliarsingh, S. K., Trainer, V. L., Wells, M. L., Wilson, C., Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S., Samanta, A., and
  Shahimol, S. R.: Characterization of oceanic Noctiluca blooms not associated with hypoxia in the Northeastern Arabian
  Sea, Harmful Algae, 74, 46–57, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hal.2018.03.008, 2018.
- 249 Lourey, M. J., Dunn, J. R., and Waring, J.: A mixed-layer nutrient climatology of Leeuwin Current and Western
- 250 Australian shelf waters: seasonal nutrient dynamics and biomass, J Mar Syst, 59(1-2), 25-51,
- 251 doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2005.10.001, 2006.
- Lourey, M., Thompson, P., McLaughlin, J., Bonham, P., and Feng, M.: Primary production and phytoplankton community
  structure during a winter shelf-scale phytoplankton bloom off Western Australia, Mar. Biol, 160, 355–369,
  doi:10.1007/s00227-012-2093-4, 2012.
- Lowe, R. J., Ivey, G. N., Brinkman, R. M., and Jones, N. L.: Seasonal circulation and temperature variability near the
   North West Cape of Australia, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 117(C4), doi:10.1029/2011JC007653, 2012.
- Lugomela, C., Lyimo, T. J., Bryceson, I., Semesi, A. K., and Bergman, B.: *Trichodesmium* in coastal waters of Tanzania:
   diversity, seasonality, nitrogen and carbon fixation, Hydrobiologia, 477, 1–13, doi: 10.1023/A:1021017125376, 2002.
- Luis, A. J., and Kawamura, H.: Air-sea interaction, coastal circulation and primary production in the eastern Arabian sea:
   A review, J. Oceanogr, 60, 205–218, doi:10.1023/B:JOCE.0000038327.33559.34, 2004.
- Luther, M. E., and O'Brien, J. J.: Modelling the variability of the Somali Current, In J. C. J. Nihoul, and B. M. Jamart
- (Eds.), Mesoscale/synoptic coherent structures in geophysical turbulence, : proceedings of the 20th International Liège
   Colloquium on Ocean Hydrodynamics, Elsevier Oceanography Series, 50,373–386, 1989.
- 264 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., and Jorge da Silva, A.: The Delagoa Bight eddy, Deep-Sea Res., 35, 619-634, doi:10.1016/0198-
- . 2265 0149(88)90134-3, 1988.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E., and Roberts, H. R.: The Natal pulse: An extreme transient on the Agulhas Current, J. Geophys. Res.,
   93(C1), 631, https://doi.org/10.1029/JC093iC01p00631, 1988.
- Lutjeharms J. R. E., and Connell, A. D. : The Natal Pulse and inshore counter currents off the South African east coast, S.
   Afr. J. Sci, 85, 533–535, 1989.
- Lutjeharms, J.R.E., and Machu, E.: An upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current. Deep-Sea Res. I, 47, 2405 2411, doi:10.1016/S0967-0637(00)00026-1, 2000.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Valentine, H. R., and van Ballegooyen, R. C.: The hydrography and water masses of the Natal Bight,
  South Africa, Cont. Shelf Res. 20, 1907–1939, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343(00)00053-4, 2000.
- 2274 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Boebel, O., van der Vaart, P. C. F., de Ruijter, W. P. M., Rossby, T., and Bryden, H. L.: Evidence
- that the natal pulse involves the Agulhas Current to its full depth, Geophys. Res. Lett., 28(18), 3449–3452.,
- 2276 https://doi.org/10.1029/2000GL012639, 2001.

- 2277 Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Boebel, O., and Rossby, H. T.: Agulhas cyclones, Deep Sea Res., Part II, 50(1), 13–34,
- 2278 https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00378-8, 2003.
- 279 Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: The coastal oceans of south-eastern Africa. In: The Sea, Volume 14B, editors: A. R. Robinson and K.
- 280 H. Brink, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, pp. 783-834, 2006.
- 2281 Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: *The Agulhas Current*, Springer, Berlin, Heidelbert, New York, 2006.
- Machu, E., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Webb, A. M., and Van Aken, H. M.: First hydrographic evidence of the southeast
  Madagascar upwelling cell, Geophys. Res. Lett., 29(21), 2009, doi:10.1029/2002GL015381, 2002.
- Madden, R. A., and Julian, P. R. : Description of Global-Scale Circulation Cells in the Tropics with a 40–50 Day Period. J
   Atmos Sci., 29(6), 1109–1123. <u>https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0469</u>, 1972.
- 286 Madhupratap, M., Kumar, S. P., Bhattathiri, P., Kumar, M. D., Raghukumar, S., Nair, K., and Ramaiah, N.: Mechanism of
- the biological response to winter cooling in the northeastern Arabian Sea, Nature, 384(6609), 549–552,
  doi:10.1038/384549a0, 1996.
- Mahongo, S.B., Francis, J., and Osima, S.E.: Wind Patterns of Coastal Tanzania: Their Variability and Trends. West.
   Indian Ocean J. Mar. Sci., 10 (2), 107-120, 2012.
- Malan, N., Backeberg, B., Biastoch, A., Durgadoo, J. V., Samuelsen, A., Reason, C., and Hermes, J.: Agulhas Current
  Meanders Facilitate Shelf-Slope Exchange on the Eastern Agulhas Bank, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 123(7), 4762–4778,
  https://doi.org/10.1029/2017JC013602, 2018.
- Malauene, B.S., Shillington, F.A., Roberts, M.J., and Moloney, C.L.: Cool, elevated chlorophyll a waters off northern
   Mozambique, Deep-Sea Res. II, 100, 68–78, doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10d.017, 2014.
- Manghnani, V., Morrison, J. M., Hopkins, T. S., and Bo"hm, E.: Advection of upwelled waters in the form of plumes off
  Oman during the Southwest Monsoon, Deep-Sea Res. II, 45, 2027–2052, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00062-9,
  1998.
- Marra, J., Dickey, T. D., Ho, C., Kinkade, C. S., Sigurdson, D. E., Weller, R., and Barber, R.T.: Variability in primary
   production as observed from moored observations in the central Arabian Sea in 1995, Deep-Sea Res., 45, 2253-2267,
   https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00070-8, 1998.
- McCosker, E., Davies, C.L. & Beckley, L.E.: Oceanographic influence on coastal zooplankton assemblages at three IMOS
   National Reference Stations in Western Australia. Mar. Freshw. Res. 71(12), 1672-1685
- 2304 https://doi.org/10.1071/MF19397, 2020.
- McCreary, J. P. Jr., Kundu, P. K., and Molinari, R. L.: A numerical investigation of dynamics, thermodynamics and mixed
  layer processes in the Indian Ocean, Prog. Oceanogr., 31, 181–244, https://doi.org/10.1016/0079-6611(93)90002-U,
  1993.
- 2308McCreary, J. P., Kohler, K. E., Hood, R. R., and Olson, D. B.: A four-component ecosystem model of biological activity2309in the Arabian Sea, Prog. Oceanogr., 37(3-4), 193–240, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(96)00005-5, 1996a.
- McCreary, J. P., Han, W., Shankar, D., and Shetye, S. R.: Dynamics of the East India Coastal Current 2. Numerical solutions, J. Geophys. Res., 101, 13993–14010, doi:10.1029/96jc00560, 1996b.
- 2312 McCreary, J. P., and Kundu, P. K.: A numerical investigation of the Somali Current during the Southwest Monsoon, J.
- 2313 Mar. Res, 46, 25–58, https://doi.org/10.1357/002224088785113711, 1988.
- McCreary, J.P., Yu, Z., Hood, R.R., Vinayachandran, P.N., Furue, R., Ishida, A., and Richards, K.J.:Dynamics of the
   Indian-Ocean oxygen minimum zones, Prog. Oceanogr. 112–113, 15–37, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2013.03.002, 2013.
- McKinnon, A., and Duggan, S.: Summer egg production rates of paracalanid copepods in subtropical waters adjacent to
   Australia's North West Cape, Hydrobiologia, 453(1), 121-132, doi:10.1023/A:1013115900841, 2001.
- 2318 McKinnon, A., and Duggan, S.: Summer copepod production in subtropical waters adjacent to Australia's North West
- 2319 Cape, Mar. Biol, 143(5), 897-907, doi:10.1007/s00227-003-1153-1, 2003.
- McPhaden, M. J. and Nagura, M.: Indian Ocean Dipole interpreted in terms of Recharge Oscillator theory, *Clim. Dyn.*, 42, 1569–1586, doi:10.1007/s00382-013-1765-1, 2014.
- Menaché, M.: Première campagne océanographique du "Commandant Robert Giraud" dans le canal de Mozambique, 11
  Octobre 28 Novembre 1957. Cah. Océanogr., 15, 4, 224-35, 1963.
- Messie, M., Ledesma, J., Kolber, D., Michisaki, R., Foley, D., and Chavez, F. : Potential new production estimates in four
  eastern boundary upwelling ecosystems, Prog. Oceanogr., 83, 151-158, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.018,
  2009.
- Messie, M., and Chavez, F. : Seasonal regulation of primary production in eastern boundary upwelling systems, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 134, 1-18, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2014.10.011, 2015.
- Meyer, A. A., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., de Villiers, S.: The nutrient characteristics of the Natal Bight, South Africa, J. Mar.
  Syst., 35, 11–37, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963(02)00043-X, 2002.
- 231 Miller, A.R., and Risebrough, R. W.: Preliminary cruise report ATLANTIS II, Cruise 8: International Indian Ocean
- Expedition, 5 July 1963 20 December 1963, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Woods Hole, Massachusetts,
  USA, 32 pp, doi:10.1575/1912/5872, 1963.
- Moffett, J. and Goepfert, T. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Reduced iron associated with secondary nitrite maxima in the Arabian
   Sea. Deep-Sea Res. Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 54, 1341-1349, 10.1016/j.dsr.2007.04.004., 2007.
- Montecino, V., and Lange, C. B.: The Humboldt Current System: Ecosystem components and processes, fisheries, and
   sediment studies, Prog. Oceanogr., 83, 65–79, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.041, 2009.
- Moore, T. S., Matear, R. J., Marra, J., and Clementson, L.: Phytoplankton variability off the Western Australian Coast:
- Mesoscale eddies and their role in cross-shelf exchange, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 943-960,
  doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.006, 2007.
- Morrison, J. M., Codispoti, L. A., Gaurin, S., Jones, B., Manghnani, V., and Zheng, Z.: Seasonal variation of hydrographic
  and nutrient fields during the US JGOFS Arabian Sea Process Study, *Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Trop. Stud. Oceanogr.*,
  45(10–11), 2053–2101. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00063-0, 1998
- 2344 Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., and Olivar, M. P.: Ichthyoplankton assemblage structure in two meso-scale Leeuwin
- 2345 Current eddies, eastern Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 1113-1128,
- 2346 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.05.045, 2007.

- 2347 Muhling, B. A., and Beckley, L.E.: Seasonal variation in horizontal and vertical structure of larval fish assemblages off
- south-western Australia, with implications for larval transport, J. Plankton Res., 29(11), 967-983,
- 2349 doi:10.1093/plankt/fbm072, 2007.
- 2350 Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., Gaughan, D., Jones, C., Miskiewicz, A., and Hesp, S.: Spawning, larval abundance and
- growth rate of Sardinops sagax off southwestern Australia: influence of an anomalous eastern boundary current, Mar.
   Ecol. Prog. Ser., 364, 157-167, doi:10.3354/meps07480, 2008a.
- Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., Koslow, J. A., and Pearce, A. F.: Larval fish assemblages and water mass structure off the oligotrophic south-western Australian coast, Fish. Oceanogr., 17(1), 16-31, doi:10.1111/j.1365-2419.2007.00452.x,
- 2355 2008b.
- 2356 Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Fernando, V., Amol, P., Aparna, S. G., Fernandes, R., Michael, G. S., Khalap, S. T.,
- Satelkar, N. P., Agarvadekar, Y., Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Kankonkar, A. and Vernekar, S.: Observed seasonal and
  intraseasonal variability of the East India Coastal Current on the continental slope, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 123, 1197–1232,
  doi:10.1007/s12040-014-0471-7, 2014.
- 2360 Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Chatterjee, A., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Numerical simulation of the observed near-
- surface East India Coastal Current on the continental slope, Clim. Dyn., 50, 3949–3980,
- 2362 doi:https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-017-3856-x, 2017.
- Mukherjee, A. and Kalita, B. K: Signature of La Ni<sup>°</sup>na in interannual variations of the East India Coastal Current during
   spring, Clim. Dyn., 53, 551–568, doi: 10.1007/s00382-018-4601-9, 2019.
- Mukherjee, A., Chatterjee, A., and Francis, P.A.: Role of Andaman and Nicobar Islands in eddy formation along western
  boundary of the Bay of Bengal, Nature Sci. Rep., 9, 10152, doi:10.1038/s41598-019-46542-9, 2019.
- Mukhopadhyay, S., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., Mukherjee, A.: Observations of the sub-inertial, near-surface East India
   Coastal Current, Cont. Shelf Res., 148, 159 177, doi: doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2017.08.020, 2017.
- Mukhopadhyay, S., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., Mukherjee, A., Fernando, V., Kankonkar, A., Khalap, S., Satelkar, N.,
  Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Khedekar, R. and Ghatkar, S.: Observed variability of the East India Coastal Current on the
  continental slope during 2009–2018, J. Earth Syst. Sci., 129, 77, doi:10.1007/s12040-020-1346-8, 2020.
- Mulholland, M. R., and Capone, D. G.: Dinitrogen fixation in the Indian Ocean, Indian Ocean Biogeochem, Process,
   Ecol. Var., 167–186, doi: 10.1029/2009GM000850, 2009.
- Murgese, D. S., and De Deckker, P.: The distribution of deep-sea benthic foraminifera in core tops from the eastern Indian
   Ocean, Mar. Micropaleontol., 56, 25-49, doi:10.1016/j.marmicro.2005.03.005, 2005.
- Murthy, A. V. S.: Observations of coastal upwelling around India, In J.Lighthill and R.P.Pearse (Ed.) Monsoon dynamics,
   Cambridge University Press, 523-528, 1981.
- 1378 Murty, B. C.: On the temperature and salinity structure of the Bay of Bengal, Curr. Sci., 27(7), 249-249, 1958.
- 1379 Murty, C.S. and Varadachari, V.V.R.: Upwelling along the east coast of India, B. Natl. Inst. Sci. India, 38, 80–86, 1968.
- 2380 Mwaluma, J.: Zooplankton species distribution and abundance during the monsoons off the Kenyan coast, 1992. In: Heip
- 2381 C.H.R., Hemminga, M.A., and de Bie, M.J.M. (Eds), Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya. Cruise reports
- Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 113–115, 1995.

- 2383 Naqvi, S.: Geographical extent of denitrification in the Arabian Sea in relation to some physical processes, Oceanologica 2384 Acta, 14, 281–290, url: http://drs.nio.org/drs/handle/2264/3222, 1991.
- 2385 Nagyi, S., Jayakumar, D., Narvekar, P., Naik, H., Sarma, V., D'souza, W., Joseph, S. and George, M.: Increased marine
- 2386 production of  $N_2O$  due to intensifying anoxia on the Indian continental shelf. Nature, 408, 346–349,
- 2387 https://doi.org/10.1038/35042551, 2000.
- 2388 Nagyi, S. W. A., Naik, H., and NarvekarP. V.: The Arabian Sea, in: Biogeochemistry of Marine Systems, edited by: 2389 Black, K. and Shimmield, G., Sheffield Academic Press, Sheffield, 156-206, 2003.
- 2390 Naqvi, S. W. A, Bange, H. W., Gibb, S. W., Goyet, C., Hatton, A. D. and Upstill-Goddard, R. C.: Biogeochemical ocean-2391 atmosphere transfers in the Arabian Sea, Prog. Oceanogr., 65(2-4 SPEC. ISS.), 116-144,
- 2392 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.005, 2005.
- 2393 Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H., Jayakumar, D. A., Shailaja, M. S. and NarvekarP. V.: Seasonal oxygen deficiency over the
- 2394 western continental shelf of India, in: Past and Present Water Column Anoxia, edited by: Neretin, L. N., NATO Science 2395 Series, IV. Earth and Environmental Sciences, 64, Springer, Dordrecht, https://doi.org/10.1007/1-4020-4297-3 08, 2006.
- 2396 Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H., Jayakumar, D. A., Pratihary, A., Narvenkar, G., Kurian, S., Agnihotri, R., Shailaja, M. S. and
- 2397 Narvekar, P. V.: Seasonal anoxia over the western Indian continental shelf, in: Indian Ocean: Biogeochemical Processes
- 2398 and Ecological Variability, edited by: Wiggert, J. D., Hood, R. R., Naqvi, S. W. A., Brink, K. H., and Smith, S. L.,
- 2399 Geophys. Monogr. Ser., 185, AGU, Washington, D.C., 333-345, 2009.
- 2400 Nagyi, S. W. A., Bange, H. W., Farías, L., Monteiro, P. M. S., Scranton, M. I., and Zhang, J.: Marine hypoxia/anoxia as a 2401 source of CH<sub>4</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>O, *Biogeosciences*, 7(7), 2159–2190, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-7-2159-2010, 2010.
- 2402 Naulita, Y., Arhatin, R. E. and Nabil: Upwelling index along the south coast of Java from satellite imagery of wind stress 2403 and sea surface temperature, IOP Conf. Series, Earth Environ. Sci., 429, 012025, doi:10.1088/1755-1315/429/1/012025, 2404 2020.
- 2405 Nehring, D. ed., The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mozambigue Channel in February-March 1980. 2406 Geodät. geophys. Veröffentl., 4, 163 pp, 1984.
- 2407 Nehring, D., E. Hagen, A. Jorge da Silva, R. Schemainda, G. Wolf, N. Michelchen, W. Kaiser, L. Postel, F. Gosselck, U.
- 2408 Brenning, E. Kühner, G. Arlt, H. Siegel, L. Gohs and G. Bublitz, : Results of oceanological studies in the Mozambique
- 2409 Channel in February – March 1980, Beitr. Meereskd., 56, 51-63, 1987.
- 2410 Newell, B. S.: The hydrography of the British East African Coastal Waters. London, East African Marine Fisheries 2411 Research Organisation., Fishery Publications, 12, 23p, 1959.
- 2412 Nguli, M. M.: Temperature, salinity and water mass structure along the Kenyan coast during the 1992 cruises A1 and A2
- 2413 of R.V. Tyro. In: Heip C.H.R., Hemminga, M.A., and de Bie, M.J.M. (Eds), Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya, 2414 Cruise reports Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 71-
- 2415 80, 1995.
- 2416 Noyon, M., Morris, T., Walker, D., and Huggett, J.: Plankton distribution within a young cyclonic eddy off south-western 2417 Madagascar, Deep-Sea Res. Part II, 166, 141–150, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.11.001, 2019.
- 2418 Nuncio, M., and Kumar, S. P.: Life cycle of eddies along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal and their
- 2419 implications, J. Marine. Syst., 94, 9–17, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2011.10.002, 2012.

- 2420 Nyadjro, E. S., Jensen, T. G., Richman, J. G., and Shriver, J. F.: On the relationship between wind, SST and the
- 2421 thermocline in the Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge, IEEE Geoscience and Remote Sensing Letters, 14(12),2315-
- 2422 2319, https://doi.org/10.1109/LGRS.2017.2762961, 2017.
- 2423 Ockhuis, S., Huggett, J.A., Gouws, G., and Sparks, C.: The 'suitcase hypothesis': Can entrainment of meroplankton by 2424 eddies provide a pathway for gene flow between Madagascar and KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa? Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 39, 4, 2425 435-451, doi:10.2989/1814232X.2017.1399292, 2017.
- 2426 Ogata, T. and Masumoto, Y.: Interactions between mesoscale eddy variability and Indian Ocean dipole events in the
- 2427 Southeastern tropical Indian Ocean—case studies for 1994 and 1997/1998, Ocean Dyn., 60, 717-730,
- 2428 doi:10.1007/s10236-010-0304-4, 2010.
- 2429 Ogata, T. and Masumoto, Y.:. Interannual modulation and its dynamics of the mesoscale eddy variability in the 2430 southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res., 116, C05005, doi:10.1029/2010JC006490, 2011.
- 2431 Olsen, E., Padera, M., Funke, M., Pires, P., Wenneck, T., and Zacarias, L.: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Survey of 2432 the living marine resources of North Mozambique (SWIOFP/ASCLME 2009 Cruise 1) 6 August-20 August 2009, Report 2433 No. EAF-N/2009/7, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2009.
- 2434 Painter, S.C.: The biogeochemistry and oceanography of the East African Coastal Current. Prog. Oceanogr., 186, 102374, 2435 doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2020.102374, 2020.
- 2436 Panikkar, N. K., and Jayaraman R.: Biological and oceanographic differences between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of
- 2437 Bengal as observed from the Indian region, Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences, 64 B, 231-
- 2438 240, https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03052161,1966.
- 2439 Pankajakshan, T., Pattanaik, J., and Ghosh, A. K.: An atlas of upwelling indices along east and west coast of India, IODC, 2440 NIO of India, 1997.
- 2441 Parameswaran, U. V., Abdul Jaleel, K. U., Sanjeevan, V. N., Gopal, A., Vijayan, A. K., Gupta, G. V. M., and Sudhakar,
- 2442 M.: Diversity and distribution of echinoderms in the South Eastern Arabian Sea shelf under the influence of seasonal
- 2443 hypoxia, Prog. Oceanogr., 165, 189–204, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2018.06.005, 2018.
- 2444 Parvathi, V., Suresh, I., Lengaigne, M., Ethe, C., Vialard, J., Levy, M., Neetu, S., Aumont, O., Resplandy, L., Naik, H., 2445 and Naqvi, S.W.A.: Positive Indian Ocean dipole events prevent anoxia off the west coast of India, Biogeosciences, 14 2446 (6), 1541-1559, doi:10.5194/bg-14-1541-2017, 2017.
- 2447 Paterson, H. L., Feng, M., Waite, A. M., Gomis, D., Beckley L. E., Holliday, D., and Thompson, P. A.: Physical and 2448 chemical signatures of a developing anti-cyclonic eddy in the Leeuwin Current, Eastern Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res., 2449 113, C07049:1-14, doi:10.1029/2007JC004707, 2008.
- 2450 Pauly, D., and Christensen, V.: Primary production required to sustain global fisheries, *Nature*, 374, 255–257, 2451 https://doi.org/10.1038/374255a0, 1995.
- 2452 Pearce, A. F., and Pattiaratchi, C.: The Capes Current: a summer counter current flowing past Cape Leeuwin and Cape 2453 Naturaliste, Western Australia, Cont Shelf Res., 19(3), 401-420, doi:10.1016/S0278-4343(98)00089-2, 1999.
- 2454 Pearce, A. F.: Eastern boundary currents of the southern hemisphere., J. R. Soc. West, Aus., 74, 35-45, 1991.

- 2455 Pearce, A. F., Lynch, M., and Hanson, C. E.: The Hillarys Transect (1): seasonal and cross-shelf variability of physical
- and chemical water properties off Perth, Western Australia, 1996–98. Cont Shelf Res., 26(15), 1689-1729,
   doi:10.1016/j.csr.2006.05.008, 2006.
- Phillips, B. F., and Pearce, A. F.: Spiny lobster recruitment off Western Australia, Bull. Mar. Sci., 61(1), 21-41, 1997.
- Piontkovski, S. A., and Al-Oufi, H. S.: The Omani shelf hypoxia and the warming Arabian Sea Int. J. Environ. Sci., 72(2),
  256-264, doi:10.1080/00207233.2015.1012361, 2015.
- Pivan, X., Krug, M., and Herbette, S.: Observations of the vertical and temporal evolution of a Natal Pulse along the
- 2462 Eastern Agulhas Bank, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 7108–7122, doi:10.1002/2015JC011582, 2016.
- Prakash, S., and Ramesh, R.: Is the Arabian Sea getting more productive?, Curr. Sci., 92(5), 667–671, 2007.
- Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Sheshshayee, M., Dwivedi, R., and Raman, M.: Quantification of new production during a winter
   Noctiluca scintillans bloom in the Arabian Sea, Geophys. Res. Lett., 35(8), doi:10.1029/2008GL033819, 2008.
- Prakash, S., Roy, R., and Lotliker, A.: Revisiting the Noctiluca scintillans paradox in northern Arabian Sea, Curr. Sci.,
  113(7), 1429, doi:10.18520/cs/v113/i07/1429-1434, 2017.
- Prasanna Kumar, S., M. Madhupratap, M. Dileep Kumar, P. M. Muraleedharan, S. N. de Souza, M. Gauns, and Sarma V.
- 2469 V. S. S.: High biological productivity in the central Arabian Sea during summer monsoon driven by Ekman pumping and
- 2470 lateral advection, Curr. Sci., 81, 1633 1638, 2001.
- Prasanna Kumar, S., Nuncio, M., Ramaiah, N., Sardesai, S., Narvekar, J., Fernandes, V., and Paul, J. T. : Eddymediated biological productivity in the Bay of Bengal during fall and spring intermonsoons, Deep Sea Res., Part I, 54, 1619–1640, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2007.06.002, 2007.
- Praveen, V., Ajayamohan, R. S., Valsala, V., and Sandeep, S.: Intensification of upwelling along Oman coast in a
   warming scenario, Geophys.Res. Lett., 43(14), 7581-7589, https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL069638, 2016.
- Pripp. T., Gammelsrød, T., and Krakstad, J. O.: Physical influence on biological production along the western shelf of
   Madagascar. Deep-Sea Res. II, 100, 174–183, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.025, 2014.
- 2478 Qu, T., Meyers, G. and Godfrey, J. S.: Ocean dynamics in the region between Australia and Indonesia and its influence on
- the variation of sea surface temperature in a global general circulation model, J. Geophys. Res., 99, 18,433-18,445,
  https://doi.org/10.1029/94JC00858, 1994.
- Qu, T. and Meyers, G.: Seasonal characteristics of circulation in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Phys.
   Oceanogr., 35, 255-267, doi:10.1175/JPO-2682.1, 2005a.
- Qu, T. and Meyers, G.: Seasonal variation of barrier layer in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res.,
  110, C11003, doi:10.1029/2004JC002816, 2005b.
- 2485 Quadfasel, D., and Schott, F.: Water mass distribution at intermediate layers off the Somali coast during the onset of the
- 2486 southwest monsoon 1979, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 12, 1358–1372, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-
- 2487 0485(1982)012<1358:WMDAIL>2.0.CO;2, 1982.

Quadfasel, D. and Cresswell, G. R.: A note on the seasonal variability of the South Java Current, J. Geophys. Res., 97,
 3685–3688, doi:10.1029/91JC03056, 1992.

- 2490 Quartly, G.D., and Srokosz, M.A.: Eddies in the southern Mozambique Channel. Deep-Sea Res. II, 51, 69-83, 2491 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.03.001, 2004.
- 2492 Raes, E. J., Waite, A. M., McInnes, A. S., Olsen, H., Nguyen, H. M., Hardman-Mountford, N., and Thompson, P. A.:
- 2493 Changes in latitude and dominant diazotrophic community alter N2 fixation. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 516, 85-102, 2494
- doi:10.3354/meps11009, 2014.
- 2495 Raes, E. J., Thompson, P. A., McInnes, A. S., Nguyen, H. M., Hardman-Mountford, N., and Waite, A. M.: Sources of new 2496 nitrogen in the Indian Ocean, Global Biogeochem. Cycles, 29(8), 1283-1297, doi:10.1002/2015GB005194, 2015.
- 2497 Raes, E. J., Bodrossy, L., van de Kamp, J., Bissett, A., and Waite, A. M.: Marine bacterial richness increases towards 2498 higher latitudes in the eastern Indian Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr. Letters, 3(1), 10-19, doi:10.1002/lol2.10058, 2018.
- 2499 Rahmstorf, S.: Thermohaline circulation: The current climate, Nature, 421(6924), 699–699, 2500 https://doi.org/10.1038/421699a, 2003.
- 2501 Raj, R.P., Peter, B.N., and Pushpadas, D.: Oceanic and atmospheric influences on the variability of phytoplankton bloom 2502 in the Southwestern Indian Ocean, J. Mar. Syst., 82, 217-229, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2010.05.009, 2010.
- 2503 Ramamirtham, C. P., and Rao, D. S.: On upwelling along the west coast of India, J. mar. biol. Ass. India, 15, 306–317, 2504 1973.
- 2505 Ramanantsoa, J.D., Krug, M. Penvend, P., Rouault, M., and Gula J.: Coastal upwelling south of Madagascar: Temporal 2506 and spatial variability, J. Mar. Syst., 178, 29-37, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2017.10.005, 2018a.
- 2507 Ramanantsoa, J. D., Penven, P., Krug, M., Gula, J., and Rouault, M.: Uncovering a new current: The Southwest 2508 MAdagascar Coastal Current. Geophys. Res. Lett., 45, https://doi.org/10.1002/2017GL075900, 2018b.
- 2509 Rao, R. R., and Sivakumar, R.: On the possible mechanisms of the evolution of a mini-warm pool during the pre-summer 2510 monsoon season and the genesis of onset vortex in the South-Eastern Arabian Sea, O. J. R. Meteorol. Soc., 125, 787-809, 2511 doi:10.1002/qj.49712555503, 1999.
- 2512 Rao, R. R., Girish Kumar, M. S., Ravichandran, M., Rao, A. R., Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Thadathil, P.: Interannual 2513 variability of Kelvin wave propagation in the wave guides of the equatorial Indian Ocean, the coastal Bay of Bengal and 2514 the southeastern Arabian Sea during 1993–2006, Deep-Sea Res., Part-I., 57,1–13, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2009.10.008, 2009.
- 2515 Rao, T. V. N., Rao, D. P., Rao, B. P., and Raju, V. S. R.: Upwelling and sinking along Visakhapatnam coast, Indian J. 2516 Mar. Sci., 15:84-87, 1986.
- 2517 Rath, S., Vinayachandran, P. N., Behara, A., and Neema, C. P. : Dynamics of summer monsoon current around Sri Lanka, 2518 Ocean Dynamics, 69(10), 1133–1154, https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-019-01295-x, 2019.
- 2519 Rennie, S. J., Pattiaratchi, C. P., and McCauley, R. D.: Eddy formation through the interaction between the Leeuwin 2520 Current, Leeuwin Undercurrent and topography, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 818-836, 2521 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.005, 2007.
- 2522 Resplandy, L., Vialard, J., Lévy, M., Aumont, O., and Dandonneau, Y.: Seasonal and intraseasonal biogeochemical 2523 variability in the thermocline ridge of the southern tropical Indian Ocean, J. Geophys. Res., 114(C7), C07024. 2524 https://doi.org/10.1029/2008JC005246, 2009.

- Resplandy, L., Lévy, M., Madec, G., Pous, S., Aumont, O., and Kumar, D. : Contribution of mesoscale processes to
   nutrient budgets in the Arabian Sea, J. Geophys. Res., 116(C11), C11007. https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007006, 2011.
- Ridderinkhof H., and de Ruiter, W.: Moored current observations in the Mozambique Channel, Deep-Sea Res. II, 50,
  1933–1955, doi:10.1016/S0967-0645(03)00041-9, 2003.
- Risien, C.M., and C. B.: A Global Climatology of Surface Wind and Wind Stress Fields from Eight Years of QuikSCAT
   Scatterometer Data, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 38, 2379-2413, https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3881.1, 2008.
- Rixen, T., Goyet, C., and Ittekkot, V.: Diatoms and their influence on the biologically mediated uptake of atmospheric
   CO2 in the Arabian Sea upwelling system, Biogeosciences, 3, 1–13, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-3-1-2006, 2006.
- 2533 Rixen, T., Cowie, G., Gaye, B., Goes, J. I., Gomes, H., Hood, R. R., Lachkar, Z., Schmidt, H., Segschneider, J. and Singh,
- A.: Reviews and syntheses: Present, past, and future of the oxygen minimum zone in the northern Indian Ocean,
  Biogeosciences, 17, 1–30, doi:10.5194/bg-17-1-2020, 2020.
- 2536 Roberts, M. J. : Chokka squid (Loligo vulgaris reynaudii) abundance linked to changes in South Africa's Agulhas Bank
- 2537 ecosystem during spawning and the early life cycle, ICES J. Mar. Sci., 62(1), 33–55,
- 2538 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.10.002, 2005.
- Roberts, M. J., and van den Berg, M. : Currents along the Tsitsikamma Coast South Africa and potential transport of
   squid paralarvae and ichthyoplankton, Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 27(2), 375–388, doi:10.2989/18142320509504096, 2005.
- 2541 Roberts, M. J., Ribbink, A. J., Morris, T., Duncan, F., Barlow, R., Kaehler, S., Huggett, J., Kyewalyanga, M., Harding, R.,
- and van den Berg, M.: 2007 Western Indian Ocean Cruise and Data Report: Alg. 160. African Coelacanth Ecosystem
- 2543 Programme, Grahamstown, 142 pp, doi:10.13140/RG.2.2.28920.88324, 2008.
- Roberts, M. J., van der Lingen, C. D., Whittle, C., and van den Berg, M.: Shelf currents, lee-trapped and transient eddies
  on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current, South Africa: their relevance to the KwaZulu-Natal sardine run, Afr. J.
  Mar. Sci., 32(2), 423–447, doi:10.2989/1814232x.2010.512655, 2010.
- Roberts, M.J., Ternon, J-F., and Morris, T.: Interaction of dipole eddies with the western continental slope of the
   Mozambique Channel, Deep-Sea Res. II, 100, 54–67, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.016, 2014.
- Roberts, M.: The Western Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (WIOURI): A Flagship IIOE2 Project. CLIVAR
   Exchanges, 19, 26-30, <u>http://www.researchgate.net/publication/283855749</u>, 2015.
- Roberts M, Nieuwenhys C.: Observations and mechanisms of upwelling in the northern KwaZulu-Natal Bight, Afr. J.
   Mar. Sci., 38: sup1, S43-S63, doi: 10.2989/1814232X.2016.1194319, 2016.
- Roberts, M., Nieuwenhuys, C., and Guastella, L.: Circulation of shelf waters in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight, South Africa,
   Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 38, S7-S21, 10.2989/1814232X.2016.1175383, 2016.
- 2555 Robinson, A.R. (Ed.) Eddies in Marine Science. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1983.
- 2556 Robinson, J., Guillotreau, P., Jiménez-Toribio, R., Lantz, F., Nadzon, L., Dorizo, J., Gerry, C., and Marsac, F. : Impacts of
- climate variability on the tuna economy of Seychelles, Climate Research, 43(3), 149–162.
- 2558 https://doi.org/10.3354/cr00890, 2010.
- Rochford, D. J.: Seasonal interchange of high and low salinity surface waters off south-west Australia, CSIRO, Division
   of Fisheries and Oceanography Technical Paper No. 29, 1969

- Roel, B. A., Hewitson, J., Kerstan, S., and Hampton, I.: The role of the Agulhas Bank in the life cycle of pelagic fish, S.
   Afr. J. Sci 90, 185–96, 1994.
- 2563 Rossi, V., Feng, M., Pattiaratchi, C., Roughan, M., and Waite, A. M.: Linking synoptic forcing and local mesoscale
- 2564 processes with biological dynamics off Ningaloo Reef, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118(3), 1211-1225,
- 2565 doi:10.1002/jgrc.20110, 2013a.
- Rossi, V., Feng, M., Pattiaratchi, C., Roughan, M., and Waite, A. M.: On the factors influencing the development of
  sporadic upwelling in the Leeuwin Current system, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118(7), 3608-3621, doi:10.1002/jgrc.20242,
  2013b.
- Rouault, M. J., Penven, P.: New perspectives on Natal Pulses from satellite observations, J. Geophys. Res., 116, C07013,
   doi:10.1029/2010JC006866, 2011.W
- Rousseaux, C. S., Lowe, R., Feng, M., Waite, A. M., and Thompson, P. A.: The role of the Leeuwin Current and mixed
   layer depth on the autumn phytoplankton bloom off Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia, Cont Shelf Res., 32, 22-35,
   doi:10.1016/j.csr.2011.10.010, 2012.
- Roxy, M. K., Modi, A., Murtugudde, R., Valsala, V., Panickal, S., Prasanna Kumar, S., and Lévy, M.: A reduction in
   marine primary productivity driven by rapid warming over the tropical Indian Ocean, Geophys.Res. Lett, *43*(2), 826-833,
   https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GL066979, 2016.
- Roy, R., P.N. Vinayachandran, Amit Sarkar, Jenson George, Chandanlal Parida, Aneesh Lotliker, Satya Prakash, Saroj
   Bondhu Choudhury, Southern Bay of Bengal: A possible hotspot for CO2 emission during the summer monsoon, Progress
   in Oceanography, 197, 0079-6611,https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2021.102638, 2021.
- Ruijter, W.D., Leeuwen,P and Lutjeharms, J.: Generation and Evolution of Natal Pulses: Solitary Meanders in the
   Agulhas Current, J. Phys. Oceanography, 29, 3043-3055, doi:<u>https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-</u>
   0485%281999%29029%3C3043%3AGAEONP%3E2.0.CO%3B2, 1999.
- Sabarros, P.S., Ménard, F., Lévénez, J.-J., Tew-Kai, E., and Ternon, J.-F.: Mesoscale eddies influence distribution and
   aggregation patterns of micronekton in the Mozambique Channel, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. ,395, 101–107,
- 2585 doi:10.3354/meps08087, 2009.
- Sætre, R., and de Paula e Silva, .: The marine fish resources of Mozambique. Reports on surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof
   Nansen, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 179 pp, 1979.
- Saetre, R. and Jorge Da Silva, A.: Water masses and circulation of the Mozambique Channel. Revista de Investigacao
   Pesqueira, No. 3, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, 83 pp., 1982.
- Saji, N. H., Goswami, B. N., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Yamagata, T.: A dipole mode in the tropical Indian Ocean,
   Nature., 401, 360–363, doi:10.1038/43854, 1999.
- Sanilkumar, K. V., Kuruvilla, T. V., Jogendranath, D. and Rao, R. R: Observations of the Western Boundary Current of
  the Bay of Bengal from a hydrographic survey during March 1993, Deep–Sea Res. :Part I, 44, 135–145, doi:
  10.1016/S0967–0637(96)00036-2, 1997.
- Sarma, G. S.: Seasonal variation of some hydrographic properties of the shelf waters off the west coast of India, Bull. Nat.
   Inst. Sci. India, 38263–276, 263–276, 1968.

- 2597 Sarma, G. S.: Upwelling off the southwest coast of India, Indian J. Mar. Sci., 7, 209–218,
- 2598 http://nopr.niscair.res.in/handle/123456789/39557, 1978.
- 2599 Sarma, V. V. S. S.: Net plankton community production in the Arabian Sea based on O2 mass balance model, Global
- 2600 biogeochem. cycles, 18(4), https://doi.org/10.1029/2003GB002198, 2004
- 2601 Sarma, V. V. S. S. Sridevi, B., Maneesha, K., Sridevi, T., Naidu, S. A., Prasad, V. R., Venkataraman, V., Achrya, T.,
- 2602 Bharati, M. D., Subbaiah, Ch.V., Kiran, B.S., Reddy, N. C. P., Sarma, V. V., Sadhuram, Y., Murty, T. V. R: Impact of
- 2603 atmospheric and physical forcings on biogeochemical cycling of dissolved oxygen and nutrients in the coastal Bay of
- 2604 Bengal, J. Oceanogr., 69(2), 229-243, Doi: 10.1007/s10872-012-0168-y, 2013.
- Sarma, V. V. S. S. and Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S. : Ventilation of oxygen to oxygen minimum zone due to anticyclonic
   eddies in the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res. Biogeosci., 123, 2145-2153, doi: 10.1029/2018JG004447, 2018.
- 2607 Sarma, V. V. S. S., Desai, D. V., Patil, J. S, Khandeparker, L., Aparna, S. G., Shankar, D., Selrina D'Souza,
- 2608 Dalabehera, H. B., Mukherjee, J., Sudharani, P., and Anil, A. C.: Ecosystem response in temperature fronts in the
- northeastern Arabian Sea, Progress in Oceanography, 165, 317-331, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2018.02.004, 2018.
- Sastry, A. A. R., and Myrland, P.: Distribution of temperature, salinity and density in the Arabian Sea along the South
   Malabar Coast (South India) during the post-monsoon season, Indian J. Fish., 6, 223–255, 1959.
- 2612 Saunders, M. I., Thompson, P. A., Jeffs, A. G., Säwström, C., Sachlikidis, N., Beckley, L. E., and Waite, A. M.: Fussy
- 2613 feeders: phyllosoma larvae of the western rocklobster (Panulirus cygnus) demonstrate prey preference, PLoS One, 7(5),
- 2614 doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0036580, 2012.
- 2615 Saville-Kent, W.: The naturalist in Australia, 302 pp.: CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, doi:10.5962/bhl.title.18339, 1897.
- 2616 Säwström, C., Beckley, L. E., Saunders, M. I., Thompson, P. A., and Waite, A. M.: The zooplankton prey field for rock
- 1617 lobster phyllosoma larvae in relation to oceanographic features of the south-eastern Indian Ocean, J. Plankton Res., 36(4),
- 2618 1003-1016, doi:10.1093/plankt/fbu019, 2014.
- Saxena, H., Sahoo, D., Khan, M. A., Kumar, S., Sudheer, A. K. and Singh, A.: Dinitrogen fixation rates in the Bay of
   Bengal during summer monsoon, Environ. Res. Commun., 2, 051007, doi: 10.1088/2515-7620/ab89fa, 2020.
- Schmidt, T. M., DeLong, E. F., and Pace, N. R.: Analysis of a marine picoplankton community by 16S rRNA gene
  cloning and sequencing, J. Bacteriol., 173(14), 4371-4378, doi:10.1128/jb.173.14.4371-4378.1991, 1991.
- Schott, F.: Monsoon response of the Somali Current and associated upwelling. Prog. Oceanogr., 12, 3, 357–381,
   doi:10.1016/0079-6611(83)90014-9, 1983.
- Schott, F., and McCreary, J. P.: The monsoon circulation of the Indian Ocean, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 51 (1),1–123,
   https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(01)00083-0, 2001.
- Schott, F. A., Xie, S. P., and McCreary, J. P.: Indian Ocean circulation and climate variability. Reviews of Geophysics, 47, 1, 1–46, doi:10.1029/2007RG000245, 2009.
- Sen Gupta, R., Moraes, C., George, M. D., Kureishy, T. W., Noronha, R. J., and Fondekar, S. P.: Chemistry and
  hydrography of the Andaman Sea, Indian J. Mar. Sci., 10,228-233, Doi: 10.1016/0198-0149(84)90035-9, 1981.

- 2631 SenGupta, R. and Naqvi, S.W.A.: Chemical Oceanography of the Indian Ocean, North of equator, Deep-Sea Res., 31,
- 2632 671-706, https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(84)90035-9, 1984.
- 2633 Sewell, R. B. S.: The temperature and salinity of the surface-waters of the Bay of Bengal and Andaman Sea, with
- reference to Laccadive Sea, in Geographic and oceanographic research in Indian waters V, Mem. Asiatic Soc. of Bay of
- 2635 Bengal, 207-356, 1929.
- Shah, P., Sajeev, R., and Gopika, N.: Study of upwelling along the west coast of India A climatological approach, J.
   Coast. Res., 31, 1151–1158, doi:10.2112/JCOASTRES-D-13-00094.1, 2015.
- Shalapyonok, A., Olson, R. J., and Shalapyonok, L. S.: Arabian Sea phytoplankton during southwest and
  northeast Monsoons 1995: composition, size structure and biomass from individual cell properties measured by
  flow cytometry, Deep Sea Res. II Top. Stud. Oceanogr. 48, 1231–1261, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(00)00137-5,
  2001.
- Shankar, D., Mccreary, J. P., Han, W., and Shetye, S. R. Dynamics of the East India Coastal Current 1. Analytic solutions
  forced by interior Ekman pumping and local alongshore winds, J. Geophys. Res., 101, 13975–13991,
  doi:10.1029/96jc00559, 1996.
- Shankar, D., and Shetye, S. R.: On the dynamics of the Lakshadweep High and Low in the southeastern Arabian Sea, J.
   Geophys. Res, 102, 12551–12562, doi:10.1029/97JC00465, 1997.
- Shankar, D., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Unnikrishnan, A. S.: The monsoon currents in the north Indian Ocean, Prog.
   Oceanog., 52, doi:10.1016/s0079-6611(02)00024-1, 63–120, 2002.
- Shankar, D., Remya, R., Anil, A., and Vijith, V.: Role of physical processes in determining the nature of fisheries in the
   eastern Arabian Sea, Prog. Oceanogr., 172, 124–158, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2018.11.006, 2019.
- Shenoi, S. S. C., P. K. Saji and A. M. Almeida: Near-surface circulation and kinetic energy in the tropical Indian Ocean
   derived from Lagdrangian drifters; J. Mar. Res. 57 885–907, doi:doi.org/10.1357/002224099321514088, 1999.
- Shenoi, S. S. C., Shankar, D, and Shetye, S. R.: Differences in heat budgets of the near-surface Arabian Sea and Bay of
   Bengal: Implications for the summer monsoon, J. Geophys. Res., 107(C6), 3052. https://doi.org/10.1029/2000JC000679,
   2002.
- Shenoi, S. C., Shankar, D., Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Durand, F.: Role of ocean in the genesis and annihilation of the core of the warm pool in the southeastern Arabian Sea, Mausam, 56, 147–160, 2005.
- Shenoy, D.M., Sujith, K.B., Gauns, M.U., Patil, S., Sarkar, A., Naik, H., Narvekar, P.V., and Naqvi, S.W.A.: Production
  of dimethylsulphide during the seasonal anoxia off Goa, Biogeochemistry, 110(1-3):47-55, doi:10.1007/s10533-012-97205, 2012.
- Shetye, S. R., Chandra Shenoi, S. S., Antony, M. K., and Kumar, V. K.: Monthly-mean wind stress along the coast of the
  north Indian Ocean, Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences Earth and Planetary Sciences, 94, 129–137,
  doi:10.1007/BF02871945, 1985.
- 2664 Shetye, S. R., Gouveia, A. D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Sundar, D., Michael, G. S., Almeida, A. M., and Santanam, K.:
- Hydrography and circulation off the west coast of India during the southwest monsoon 1987, J. Mar. Res., 48, 359–378,
   doi:10.1357/002224090784988809, 1990.

- Shetye, S. R., Shenoi, S. S. C., Gouveia, A. D., Michael, G. S., Sundar, D., and Nampoothiri, G.: Wind-driven coastal upwelling along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal during the southwest monsoon, Cont. Shelf Res., 11, 1397-1408, Doi: 10.1016/0278-4343(91)90042-5, 1991.
- 2670 Shetye, S.R., Gouveia, A.D., Shenoi, S.S.C., Sundar, D., Michael, G.S., and Nampoothiri, G.: The western boundary
- 2671 current of the seasonal subtropical gyre in the Bay of Bengal, J. Geophys. Res., 98, 945–954,
- 2672 doi:10.1029/92jc02070,1993.
- 2673 Shetye, S.R., Gouveia, A.D., Shankar, D., Shenoi, S.S.C., Vinayachandran, P.N., Sundar, D., Michael, G.S., and
- Nampoothiri, G.: Hydrography and circulation in the western Bay of Bengal during the northeast monsoon, J. Geophys.
   Res., 101, 14011–14025, doi:10.1029/95jc03307, 1996.
- 2676 Shetye, S. R., and Gouveia, A. D.: Coastal circulation in the North Indian Ocean: Coastal segment (14, S-W). In:
- 2677 Robinson, A.R., Brink, K.H. (Eds.), The Global Coastal Ocean: Regional Studies and Syntheses, The Sea, vol. 11. John
  2678 Wiley and Sons, New York, pp. 523–555 (Chapter 18), 1998.
- Shi, W., Morrison, J. M., Bo"hm, E., and Manghnani, V.: The Oman upwelling zone during 1993, 1994 and 1995, Deep Sea Res. II, 47, 1227–1247, http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(99)00142-3, 2000.
- 2681 Sikka, D.R.: Some aspects of the large scale fluctuations of summer monsoon rainfall over India in relation to fluctuations
- in the planetary and regional scale circulation parameters, *Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. (Earth Planet Sci.)*, 89, 179–195,
- 2683 https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02913749, 1980.
- Singh, A., Gandhi, N., Ramesh, R. and Prakash, S.: Role of cyclonic eddy in enhancing primary and new production in the
   Bay of Bengal, J. Sea Res., 97, 5-13, Doi: 10.1016/j.seares.2014.12.002, 2015.
- Singh, A., Gandhi, N., and Ramesh, R.: Surplus supply of bioavailable nitrogen through N<sub>2</sub> fixation to primary producers
  in the eastern Arabian Sea during autumn, Cont. Shelf. Res., 181, 103–110, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2019.05.012, 2019.
- Smith, R. L., and Bottero, J. S.: On upwelling in the Arabian Sea. In M. Angel (Ed.), A voyage of discovery, 291–304.
  New York: Pergamon Press., 1977.
- Smith, S.L., and Codispoti, L.: Southwest Monsoon of 1979: Chemical and biological response of Somali coastal waters,
   Science, 209, 597-600, doi: 10.1126/science.209.4456.597, 1980.
- 2692 Smith, R. L., Huyer, A., Godfrey, J. S., and Church, J. A.: The Leeuwin Current off western Australia, 1986–1987, J.
   2693 Phys. Oceanogr., 21(2), 323-345, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485(1991)021<0323:TLCOWA>2.0.CO;2, 1991.
- 2694 Smitha, B. R., Sanjeevan, V. N., Vimalkumar, K. G., and Revichandran, C.: On the Upwelling off the southern tip and 2695 along the west coast of India, J. Coast. Res., 95–102, doi:10.2112/06-0779.1, 2008.
- Sprintall, J., Chong, J., Syamsudin, F., Morawitz, W., Hautala, S., Bray, N., and Wijffels, S.: Dynamics of the South Java
   Current in the Indo-Australian basin, Geophys. Res. Lett., 26, 2493–2496, doi:10.1029/1999GL002320, 1999.
- 2698 Sreeush, M. G., Valsala, V., Pentakota, S., Prasad, K. V. S. R., and Murtugudde, R.: Biological production in the Indian
- 2699 Ocean upwelling zones Part 1: refined estimation via the use of a variable compensation depth in ocean carbon models,
- 2700 Biogeosciences, 15, 1895-1918, doi:10.5194/bg-15-1895-2018, 2018.
- Srokosz, M. A., and Quartly, G. D.: The Madagascar Bloom: A serendipitous study, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118, 14–25,
   doi:10.1029/2012JC008339, 2013.

- Strzelecki, J., and Koslow, J.: Mesoplankton, In Strategic Research Fund for the Marine Environment Final Report (Vol. 2), 88-102, CSIRO Australia, 2006.
- Strzelecki, J., Koslow, J. A., and Waite, A.: Comparison of mesozooplankton communities from a pair of warm- and coldcore eddies off the coast of Western Australia, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 1103-1112,
  10.1016/j. h. 2.2007.02.004.2007
- 2707 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.004, 2007.
- 2708 Sudheesh, V., Gupta, G.V.M., Sudharma, K., Naik, H., Shenoy, D., Sudhakar, M., and Naqvi, S.: Upwelling intensity
- $\begin{array}{l} $?709 \\ \text{modulates N}_{2}O \text{ concentrations over the western Indian shelf, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 8551–8565, } \\ $?710 \\ \text{doi:}10.1002/2016JC012166, 2016. \end{array}$
- 2711 Sudheesh, V.: Influence of Upwelling on Seasonal Hypoxia/Anoxia and Greenhouse Gases along the Southwestern
- 2712 Continental Shelf of India, Ph.D Thesis, Cochin University of Science and Technology, Cochin,
- 2713 http://hdl.handle.net/10603/256272, 2018.
- Sudheesh, V., Gupta, G. V. M., and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Massive Methane Loss During Seasonal Hypoxia/Anoxia in the
   Nearshore Waters of Southeastern Arabian Sea, *Front. Mar. Sci.*, 7. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2020.00324, 2020.
- Suginohara, N.: Coastal upwelling: Onshore-offshore circulation, equatorward coastal jet and poleward undercurrent over
   a continental shelf-slope, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 12, 272–284,1982.
- 2718 Suresh, I., Vialard, J., Lengaigne, M., Han, W., McCreary, J., Durand, F., & Muraleedharan, P. M.: Origins of wind-
- driven intraseasonal sea level variations in the North Indian Ocean coastal waveguide, Geophys. Res.
  Lett., 40, 5740– 5744. https://doi.org/10.1002/2013GL058312, 2013.
- Susanto, R. D., Gordon, A. L., and Zheng, Q.: Upwelling along the coasts of Java and Sumatra and its relation to ENSO,
   Geophys. Res. Lett., 28, 1599-1602, doi:10.1029/2000GL011844, 2001.
- Susanto, R. D., and Marra, J.: Effect of the 1997/98 El Nino on chlorophyll a variability along the southern coasts of Java
   and Sumatra, Oceanography, 18(4), 124-127, doi:10.5670/oceanog.2005.13, 2005.
- Sutton, A. L., and Beckley, L. E.: Influence of the Leeuwin Current on the epipelagic euphausiid assemblages of the
   south-east Indian Ocean, Hydrobiologia, 779(1), 193-207, doi:10.1007/s10750-016-2814-7, 2016.
- 2727 Sverdrup, H. U.: On the evaporation from the oceans, J. Mar. Res. 1, 3-14, 1937.
- Swallow, J. C., and Bruce, J. C.: Current measurements off the Somali coast during the southwest monsoon of 1964,
   Deep-Sea Res., 13, 861–888, https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(76)90908-6, 1966.
- Swart, V. P., Largier, J. L.: Thermal structure of Agulhas Bank water, South Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 5:1, 243-252, doi:
   10.2989/025776187784522153, 1987.
- 2732 Takahashi, T., Sutherland, S. C., Chipman, D. W., Goddard, J. G., Ho, C., Newberger, T., Sweeney, C., and Munro, D. R.:
- Climatological distributions of pH, pCO<sub>2</sub>, total CO<sub>2</sub>, alkalinity, and CaCO<sub>3</sub> saturation in the global surface ocean, and
   temporal changes at selected locations, Mar. Chem., 164:95-125, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marchem.2014.06.004, 2014.
- Taylor, J., and Pearce, A.: Ningaloo Reef currents: Implications for coral spawn dispersal, zooplankton and whale shark
   abundance, J. R. Soc. West Aus, 82(2), 57-65, 1999.

- 2737 Ternon, J.-F., Bach, P., Barlow, R., Huggett, J., Jaquemet, S., Marsac, F., Menard, F., Penven, P., Potier, M., and Roberts,
- 2738 M.: The Mozambique Channel: from physics to upper trophic levels, Deep-Sea Res. II 100, 1–9,
- 2739 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.012, 2014.
- Tew-Kai, E., and Marsac, F.: Patterns of variability of sea surface chlorophyll in the Mozambique Channel: A quantitative
   approach, J. Mar. Syst., 77, 77–88, doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2008.11.007, 2009.
- 1742 Tew Kai, E., and Marsac, F.: Influence of mesoscale eddies on spatial structuring of top predators' communities in the
   1743 Mozambique Channel, Prog. Oceanogr 86, 214–223, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2010.04.010, 2010.
- Thompson, R. O.R.Y., and Veronis, G.: Poleward boundary current off Western Australia, Mar. Freshw. Res., 34(1), 173185, doi:10.1071/MF9830173, 1983 .
- Thompson, R. O.R.Y.: Observations of the Leeuwin Current off Western Australia, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 14(3), 623-628,
   doi:10.1175/1520-0485, 1984.
- 1748 Thompson, R.O.R.Y.: Continental-shelf-scale model of the Leeuwin Current, J. Mar. Res., 45(4), 813-827,
   10.1357/002224087788327190, 1987.
- Thompson, P., Wild-Allen, K., Lourey, M., Rousseaux, C., Waite, A., Feng, M., and Beckley, L. E.: Nutrients in an oligotrophic boundary current: evidence of a new role for the Leeuwin Current, Prog. Oceanogr., 91(4), 345-359,
- 2752 doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2011.02.011, 2011.
- Thushara, V. and Vinayachandran, P. N. : Formation of summer phytoplankton bloom in the northwestern Bay of Bengal
  in a coupled physical-ecosystem model, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121 (12), 8535-8550, Doi: 10.1002/2016JC011987,
  2016.
- Thushara, V., Vinayachandran, P. N., Matthews, A. J., Webber, B. G. M., and Queste, B. Y. : Vertical distribution of
  chlorophyll in dynamically distinct regions of the southern Bay of Bengal, Biogeosciences, 16(7), 1447–1468,
  https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-16-1447-2019, 2019.
- 1759 Thushara V., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Unprecedented Surface Chlorophyll Blooms in the Southeastern Arabian Sea
   1760 During an Extreme Negative Indian Ocean Dipole, Geophys. Res. Lett. https://doi.org/10.1029/2019GL085026, 2020.
- 2761 Tomczak, M., and Godfrey, J.S.: Regional Oceanography: An Introduction. Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1994.
- Tranter, D.J. and Newell, B. S.: Enrichment experiments in the Indian Ocean, Deep-Sea Res. Oceanogr. Abstr., 10(1-2), 1doi:10.1016/0011-7471(63)90173-6, 1962.
- 1764 Tranter, D. J. and Kerr, J.D. : Seasonal variations in the Indian Ocean along 110°E. V. Zooplankton biomass, Mar.
   1765 Freshw. Res. 20, 77-84, 1969.
- Tranter, D.J. and Kerr, J.D. : Further studies of plankton ecosystems in the eastern Indian Ocean. III. Numerical
   abundance and biomass, Mar. Freshw. Res., 28, 557-583, 1977.
- Tripathi, N., Sahu, L. K., Singh, A., Yadav, R., and Karati, K. K.: High levels of isoprene in the marine boundary layer of
  Arabian Sea during spring inter-monsoon: Role of phytoplankton bloom, ACS Earth and Space Chemistry,
- 2770 doi:10.1021/acsearthspacechem.9b00325, 2020a.

- 2771 Tripathi, N., Sahu, L. K., Singh, A., Yadav, R., Patel, A., Patel, K., and Meenu, P.: Elevated levels of biogenic non-
- methane hydrocarbons in the marine boundary layer of the Arabian Sea during the inter-monsoon, J. Geophys. Res.
- 2773 Atmos., https://doi.org/10.1029/2020JD032869, 2020b.
- Tsugawa, M., and Hasumi, H.: Generation and growth mechanism of the Natal pulse. J. Phys. Oceanogr., 40, 1597–1612,
   doi:10.1175/2010JPO4347.1, 2010.
- Turpie J. K, Beckley, L. E., Katua, S. M.: Biogeography and the selection of priority areas for the conservation of South
   African coastal fishes, Biol. Conserv. 92, 59–72, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-3207(99)00063-4, 2000.
- 1778 Twomey, L. J., Waite, A. M., Pez, V., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Variability in nitrogen uptake and fixation in the
  1779 oligotrophic waters off the south west coast of Australia, Deep Sea Res. Part II: Top. Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 925-942.
  1780 doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.001, 2007
- Valsala, V. and Maksyutov, S.: A short surface pathway of the subsurface Indonesian throughflow water from the Java
  coast associated with upwelling, Ekman transport, and subduction, Int. J. Oceanogr., 540783, 1-15,
  doi:10.1155/2010/540783, 2010.
- Van Leeuwen, P. J., de Ruijter, W. P. N., and Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Natal pulses and the formation of Agulhas Rings, J.
  Geophys. Res., 105, 6425-6436, https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC900196, 2000.
- Varadachari, V. V. R.: On the process of upwelling and sinking on the east coast of India, Os. Univ. Press, Inst. of
   Oceanogr. Sci., Wormley, England, Prof. Mahadevan Shastiabdapurti commemoration Vol:1–27, 1961.
- Varela, R., Álvarez, I., Santos, F., deCastro, M., and Gómez-Gesteira, M.: Has upwelling strengthened along worldwide
   coasts over 1982-2010?, Sci. Rep, 5, 10016, doi:10.1038/srep10016, 2015.
- Varela, R., Santos, F., Gómez-Gesteira, M., Álvarez, I., Costoya, X., and Días, J. M.: Influence of coastal upwelling on
  SST trends along the south coast of Java, PLoS ONE, 11(9), e0162122, doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0162122, 2016.
- Veldhuis, M. J., Kraay, G. W., Van Bleijswijk, J. D., and Baars, M. A.: Seasonal and spatial variability in phytoplankton
  biomass, productivity and growth in the northwestern Indian Ocean: The southwest and northeast monsoon, 1992–1993.
  Deep-Sea Res. Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers, 44(3), 425–449, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637(96)00116-1,
  1997.
- Vialard, J., Foltz, G. R., McPhaden, M. J., Duvel, J. P., and de Boyer M.: Strong Indian Ocean sea surface temperature signals associated with the Madden-Julian Oscillation in late 2007 and early 2008, Geophys. Res. Lett., 35, L19608, doi:10.1029/2008GL035238, 2008.
- Vialard, J., Shenoi, S. S. C., McCreary, J. P., Shankar, D., Durand, F., Fernando, V., and Shetye, S. R.: Intraseasonal
   response of the northern Indian Ocean coastal waveguide to the Madden-Julian Oscillation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 36,
   doi:10.1029/2009GL038450, 2009a.
- Vialard, J., Duvel, J. P., McPhaden, M. J., Bouruet-Aubertot, P., Ward, B., Key, E., Bourras, D., Weller, R., Minnett, P.,
  Weill, A., Cassou, C., Eymard, L., Fristedt, T., Basdevant, C., Dandonneau, Y., Duteil, O., Izumo, T., de Boyer Montégut,
  C., Masson, S., ... Kennan, S. : Cirene: Air—Sea Interactions in the Seychelles—Chagos Thermocline Ridge Region,
  Bull. Amer. Meteor Soc., 90(1), 45–62, https://doi.org/10.1175/2008BAMS2499.1, 2009b.
- Vic, C., Capet, X., Roullet, G., and Carton, X.: Western boundary upwelling dynamics off Oman. Ocean Dynamics, 67(5),
   585–595, https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-017-1044-5, 2017.

- Vidya, P. J., S. Das, M. and Murali, R. : Contrasting Chl-*a* responses to the tropical cyclones Thane and Phailin in the
   Bay of Bengal, J. Mar. Syst., doi: 10.1016/j.jmarsys.2016.10.001, 2017.
- 2810 Vijith, V., P. N. Vinayachandran, V. Thushara, P. Amol, D. Shankar, and A. C. Anil (2016), Consequences of inhibition
- 2811 of mixed-layer deepening by the West India Coastal Current for winter phytoplankton bloom in the northeastern Arabian
- 2812 Sea, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 121, 6583–6603, doi:10.1002/2016JC012004.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., and Shetye, S. R.: The warm pool in the Indian Ocean, Proceedings of the Indian Academy of
   Sciences Earth and Planetary Sciences, 100, 165–175. doi:10.1007/BF02839431, 1991.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Shetye, S. R., Sengupta, D., and Gadgil, S.: Forcing mechanisms of the Bay of Bengal circulation,
   Curr. Sci., 71, 753–763, 1996.
- 2817 Vinayachandran, P. N., and Yamagata, T.: Monsoon Response of the Sea around Sri Lanka: Generation of Thermal
- 2818 Domes and Anticyclonic Vortices, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 28(10), 1946–1960. https://doi.org/10.1175/1520 2819 0485(1998)028<1946:MROTSA>2.0.CO;2, 1998.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Masumoto, Y., Mikawa, T., and Yamagata, T. : Intrusion of the Southwest Monsoon Current into the Bay of Bengal J. Geophys. Res. : Oceans, 104(C5), 11077–11085, <u>https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC900035</u>, 1999.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Murty, V. S. N., Ramesh Babu, V.: Observations of barrier layer formation in the Bay of Bengal
   during summer monsoon, J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans, doi: 10.1029/2001JC000831, 2002.
- Vinaychandran, P.N. and Mathew, S.: Phytoplankton bloom in the Bay of Bengal during the northeast monsoon and its
   intensification by cyclones, Geophy. Res. Lett., doi: 10.1029/2002GL016717, 2003.
- Vinayachandran P. N., Chauhan, P., Mohan, M., and Nayak, S. : Biological response of the sea around Sri Lanka to
   summer monsoon, Geophys. Res. Lett., 31, doi:10.1029 /2003GL018533, 2004.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., McCreary Jr., J.P, Hood, .R. R and. Kohler, K.E.: A numerical investigation of the phytoplankton
  bloom in the Bay of Bengal during Northeast Monsoon, J. Geophys. Res., 110 (C12001), doi:<u>10.1029/2005JC002966</u>,
  2005.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Shankar, D., Kurian, J., Durand, F., and Shenoi, S. S. C.: Arabian Sea Mini warm pool and the
   monsoon onset vortex, Curr. Sci., 93(2), 203-214, 2007.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., and Saji, N. H.: Mechanisms of South Indian Ocean intraseasonal cooling, Geophys. Res. Lett.,
   35(23), L23607, <u>https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GL035733</u>, 2008.
- Vinayachandran, P. N. : Impact of Physical Processes on Chlorophyll Distribution in the Bay of Bengal, 71–86,
   AGU, Washington, D. C., doi:10.1029/2008GM000705, 2009.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Matthews, A. J., Kumar, K. V., Sanchez-Franks, A., Thushara, V., George, J., Vijith, V., Webber,
  B. G. M., Queste, B. Y., Roy, R., Sarkar, A., Baranowski, D. B., Bhat, G. S., Klingaman, N. P., Peatman, S. C., Parida, C.,
  Heywood, K. J., Hall, R., King, B., ... Joshi, M: BoBBLE: Ocean–Atmosphere Interaction and Its Impact on the South
  Asian Monsoon, Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc., 99(8), 1569–1587. https://doi.org/10.1175/BAMS-D-16-0230.1, 2018.
- 2841 Vinayachandran, P. N, Umasankar Das, Shankar, D., Jahfer, A., Behara, A., Balakrishnan Nair, T.M., and Bhat, G.S.:
- Maintenance of the southern Bay of Bengal cold pool, Deep-Sea Res. Part -II, <u>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2019.07.012</u>,
   2020.

- Vos de, A., Pattiaratchi, C. B., and Wijeratne, E. M. S.: Surface circulation and upwelling patterns around Sri Lanka,
- 2845 Biogeosciences, 11, 5909–5930, https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-11-5909-2014, 2014.
- 2846 Waite, A., Muhling, B. A., Holl, C. M., Beckley, L. E., Montoya, J. P., Strzelecki, J., Thompson, P. A. and Pesant, S. C.:
- Food web structure in two counter-rotating eddies based on δ15N and δ13C isotopic analyses, Deep-Sea Res. Part 2 Top.
  Stud. Oceanogr., 54(8), 1055-1075. doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.010, 2007a.
- Waite, A., Thompson, P. A., Pesant, S. C., Feng, M., Beckley, L. E., Domingues, C. M., Gaughan, D., Hanson, C., Holl,
- 2850 C. M., Koslow, T., Meuleners, M., Montoya, J. P., Moore, T., Muhling, B. A., Paterson, H., Rennie, S., Strzelecki, J. and 2851 Twomey, L.: The Leeuwin Current and its eddies: An introductory overview, Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr.,
- 2852 54(8), 789-796, doi:10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.008, 2007b.
  - Waite, A. M., Rossi, V., Roughan, M., Tilbrook, B., Thompson, P. A., Feng, M., Wyatt, A. S. J., and Raes, E. J.:
  - Formation and maintenance of high-nitrate, low pH layers in the eastern Indian Ocean and the role of nitrogen fixation,
  - 2855 Biogeosciences, 10(8), 5691–5702, doi:10.5194/bg-10-5691-2013, 2013.
  - Waite, A. M., Beckley, L. E., Guidi, L., Landrum, J. P., Holliday, D., Montoya, J., Paterson, H., Feng, M., Thompson, P.
    A., and Raes, E. J.: Cross-shelf transport, oxygen depletion, and nitrate release within a forming mesoscale eddy in the
    eastern Indian Ocean, Limnol. Oceanogr., 61(1), 103-121, doi:10.1002/lno.10218, 2016.
  - Waite, A. M., Raes, E., Beckley, L. E., Thompson, P. A., Griffin, D., Saunders, M., Säwström, C., O'Rorke, R., Wang, M.,
    Landrum, J. P., and Jeffs, A.: Production and ecosystem structure in cold-core vs. warm-core eddies: Implications for the
    zooplankton isoscape and rock lobster larvae, Limnol. Oceanogr., 64(6), 2405-2423, doi:10.1002/lno.11192, 2019.
  - 2862 Walker, N. D., : Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current and episodic upwelling south of Africa. Deep-Sea Res.,
  - Walker, N. D., : Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current and episodic upwelling south of Africa. Deep-Sea Res.,
    33A, 1083–1106, doi:10.1016/0198-0149(86)90032-4, 1986.
  - Wallen, I.E.: The International Indian Ocean Expedition: A Status Report, Journal of the Washington Academy of
     Sciences, 54, 3, March 1964, pp. 45-53, https://www.jstor.org/stable/24535159, 1964.
  - Wang, Y., and McPhaden, M. J.: Seasonal cycle of cross-equatorial flow in the central Indian Ocean. J. Geophys. Res. :
     Oceans, 122(5), 3817–3827, <u>https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC012537</u>, 2017.
  - Warren, B. A.: Medieval Arab references to the seasonally reversing currents of the north Indian Ocean, Deep-Sea Res.,
    13, 167–171, https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(66)91097-7, 1966.
  - Warren, B. A.: The shallow oxygen minimum of the South Indian Ocean, Deep Sea Res. Part I Oceanogr. Res. Pap.,
    28(8), 859-864, doi:10.1016/S0198-0149(81)80005-2, 1981.
  - Weaver, A. J., and Middleton, J. H.: On the dynamics of the Leeuwin Current, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 19(5), 626-648,
     doi:10.1175/1520-0485(1989)019<0626:otdotl>2.0.co;2, 1989.
  - 2874 Webber, B. G. M., Matthews, A. J., Vinayachandran, P. N., Neema, C. P., Sanchez-Franks, A., Vijith, V., Amol, P., and
  - 2875 Baranowski, D. B. : The Dynamics of the Southwest Monsoon Current in 2016 from High-Resolution In Situ
  - 2876 Observations and Models, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 48(10), 2259–2282, https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-17-0215.1, 2018.
  - Webster, P.J., Moore, A.M., Loschnigg, J.P., and Leben, R.R.: Coupled ocean-atmosphere dynamics in the Indian Ocean
     during 1997-98, Nature., 401:356–360, doi:10.1038/43848,1999.

- 2879 Wei, X., Liao, X., Zhan, H. and Liu, H.: Estimates of potential new production in the Java-Sumatra upwelling system,
- 2880 Chin. J. Oceanol. Limnol., 30, 1063-1067, doi:10.1007/s00343-012-1281-x, 2012.
- 2881 Weimerskirch, H., Le Corre, M., Jaquemet, S., Potier, M., and Marsac, F.: Foraging strategy of a top predator in tropical
- waters: great frigate birds in the Mozambique Channel, Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser., 275, 297–308, doi:10.3354/meps275297,
  2004.
- 2884 Weller, E., Holliday, D., Feng, M., Beckley, L., and Thompson, P.: A continental shelf scale examination of the Leeuwin
- 2885 Current off Western Australia during the austral autumn–winter, Cont Shelf Res., 31(17), 1858-1868,
- 2886 doi:10.1016/j.csr.2011.08.008, 2011.
- Wiggert, J., Hood, R., Banse, K., and Kindle, J.: Monsoon-driven biogeochemical processes in the Arabian Sea, Prog.
  Oceanogr., 65(2–4), 176–213, doi:10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.008, 2005.
- Wiggert, J. D., Murtugudde, R. G. and Christian, J. R.: Annual ecosystem variability in the tropical Indian Ocean: results
   of a coupled bio-physical ocean general circulation model, Deep-Sea Res. II 53, 644–676, 2006.
- Wiggert, J. D., and Murtugudde, R. G.: The sensitivity of the Southwest Monsoon phytoplankton bloom to variations in aeolian iron deposition over the Arabian Sea, J. Geophys. Res. 112. http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2006JC003514, 2007.
- Wilson, S., Carleton, J., and Meekan, M.: Spatial and temporal patterns in the distribution and abundance of
  macrozooplankton on the southern North West Shelf, Western Australia, Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci., 56(5-6), 897-908,
  doi:10.1016/S0272-7714(02)00285-8, 2003.
- Wirth, A., Willebrand, J., and Schott, F.: Variability of the Great Whirl from observations and models, Deep-Sea
   Res. Pt. II, 49,1279–1295, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(01)00165-5, 2002.
- Woo, M., Pattiaratchi, C., and Schroeder, W.: Dynamics of the Ningaloo Current off Point Cloates, Western Australia,
   Mar. Freshw. Res., 57(3), 291-301, doi:10.1071/mf05106, 2006a.
- Woo, M., Pattiaratchi, C., and Schroeder, W.: Summer surface circulation along the Gascoyne continental shelf, Western
   Australia, Cont Shelf Res., 26(1), 132-152, doi:10.1016/j.csr.2005.07.007, 2006b.
- Woo, M., and Pattiaratchi, C.: Hydrography and water masses off the western Australian coast, Deep Sea Res. Part I
   Oceanogr. Res. Pap., 55(9), 1090-1104, doi:10.1016/j.dsr.2008.05.005, 2008.
- Wright, J. J., Konwar, K. M., and Hallam, S. J.: Microbial ecology of expanding oxygen minimum zones, Nature
   Publishing Group, 10(6), 381–394, https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro2778, 2012.
- Wyrtki, K.: The upwelling in the region between Java and Australia during the South-East monsoon, Aust. J. Mar.
  Freshw. Res., 13, 217-225, doi:10.1071/MF9620217, 1962.
- Wyrtki, K. Physical oceanography of the Indian Ocean. Pp. 18–36 in B. Zeitzschel, ed. ,The biology of the Indian Ocean.
   Springer-Verlag, New York, 1973.
- Xie, S.-P., Annamalai, H., Schott, F. A., and McCreary Jr. J.P.: Structure and mechanism of South Indian Ocean climate
   variability, *J.Clim.*, 15, 864–878, https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0442, 2002.

- 2912 Xu, J., Lowe, R. J., Ivey, G. N., Pattiaratchi, C., Jones, N. L., and Brinkman, R.: Dynamics of the Wei summer shelf
- 2913 circulation and transient upwelling off Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 118(3), 1099-1125,
- 2914 doi:10.1002/jgrc.20098, 2013.
- 2915 Xue, L., Wang, H., Jiang, L.-Q., Cai, W.-J., Wei, Q., Song, H., Kuswardani, R. T. D., Pranowo, W. S., Beck, B., Liu, L.
- and Yu, W.: Aragonite saturation state in a monsoonal upwelling system off Java, Indonesia, J. Mar. Sys., 153, 10–17,
  doi:10.1016/j.jmarsys.2015.08.003, 2016.
- Yamagata, T., Behera, S. K., Luo, J.-J., Masson, S., Jury, M. R., & Rao, S. A. : Coupled Ocean-Atmosphere Variability in
   the Tropical Indian Ocean, Geophysical Monograph Series, 147, 189–211, <a href="https://doi.org/10.1029/147GM12">https://doi.org/10.1029/147GM12</a>, 2004.
- Yokoi, T., Tozuka, T., and Yamagata, T.: Seasonal Variations of the Seychelles Dome Simulated in the CMIP3 Models, J.
   Phys. Oceanogr., 39(2), 449–457, https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3914.1, 2008.
- Yu, W., Hood, R., D'Adamo, N., McPhaden, M. et.al., :Eastern Indian Ocean upwelling Research Initiative (EIOURI),
- 1923 The EIOURI Science Plan, ESSO Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services (INCOIS), Hyderabad, India,
   1924 49pp, 2016.
- 2925 Zavala-Garay, J., Theiss, J., Moulton, M., Walsh C., van Woesik R., Mayorga-Adame, C.G., García-Reyes, M., Mukaka,
- D.S., Whilden K., and Shaghude, Y.W.: On the dynamics of the Zanzibar Channel, J. Geophys. Res. Oceans, 120, 6091–
  6113, doi:10.1002/2015JC010879, 2015.
- 2928
- 2929
- 2930
- 2931 Figures





Figure 1A: Climatological (Locarnini, 2018) SST averaged from surface to 50 m depth (shaded ) and QuikSCAT

2932 2933 2934 2935 (http://apdrc.soest.hawaii.edu.) winds (vectors m s<sup>-1</sup>), for the months of (a) January and (b) July. The colour scale for SST is given to the right of the panels and the scale vector for wind speed is given at the top.



Figure 1B: A schematic representation of the major currents systems (modified after Schott et al., 2009) in the Indian Ocean for January (left panel) and July(right panel), overlayed on chlorophyll (shaded, mg m<sup>-3</sup>) climatology. Abbreviations are: West India Coastal Current (WICC), East India Coastal Current (EICC), Sri Lanka Dome (SLD), South Equatorial Current (SEC), South Equatorial Counter Current (SECC), Northeast and Southeast Madagascar Current (NEMC and SEMC), East African Coastal Current (EACC), Somali Current (SC), Southern Gyre (SG) and Great Whirl (GW) Northeast Monsoon Current( NMC), South Java Current (SJC), Indonesian Through Flow(ITF), East Gyral Current (EGC), and Leeuwin Current (LC), Northeast monsoon currenct (NMC ) for and Southwest monsoon (SMC). Chlorophyl data is monthly climatology from SeaWiFs (ref:http://nomads.gfdl.noaa.gov).

- .949



Figure 2: SST image highlighting the Agulhas Current flowing along the east coast of South Africa. PE = Port Elizabeth, PA = Port Alfred. Insert highlights a south-westward propagating Natal pulse (a singular meander in the trajectory) which has a cold core. The shelf on the east coast is narrow with a steep continental slope. Exceptions are the KZN Bight and the Agulhas Bank.

.))|

- .962



1969Figure 3: Sections across the Agulhas Current, showing sigma-t values obtained during March 1969 (after<br/>Harris and Van Foreest, 1978). All show water with a density greater than 26.60 upwelled along the inshore<br/>edge of the Agulhas Current. C.T and P.E represents Cape Town and Prot Elizabeth, respectively.



1982Figure 4: A composite chlorophyll satellite image chosen to highlight the main productivity features commonly1983found on the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current. Note the different chlorophyll scales applicable to the LHS<br/>and RHS parts of the composite. Highlighted are the cold ridge on the central Agulhas Bank (AB), Port Alfred1984upwelling extending onto the eastern AB, the Durban (break-away) eddy with a similar feature passing Port1985St Johns where a semi-permanent smaller cyclonic feature often exists.

- .909



- 22

2999Figure 5: Satellite SST (LHS) and chlorophyll-a (RHS) images of a Natal pulse on 2 April 2010 off the narrow3000Transkei shelf. Note the high levels of chl-a on the eastern side of the cyclone (meander) which protrude of the<br/>shelf.



3003 3004

3011

Figure 6: Tracer concentration at 64 m in a AGU-HYCOM to reveal shelf edge upwelling. Tracers were initialized in the Agulhas Current below 400 m over a 6-week period during a meander event in 2001 and used as a proxy for upwelling. The 0.5-m sea level contour is highlighted to show the inshore edge of the current as the meander propagates along the coast (after Malan et al., 2018).





\$020Figure 7: Vertical sections of CTD data collected along a trans-shelf transect off Port St Johns to a depth<br/>of 1 000 m near Port St Johns on 4 May 2005 (see Roberts et al., 2010). Both temperature (a) and salinity<br/>(b) show slope upwelling with a surface temperature of 16 °C near Station 4 in the centre of the Port St<br/>Johns-Waterfall Bluff cyclonic eddy. Graphic after Roberts et al. (2010).





summer (a, JAN), fall (b, APR), winter (c, JUL) and spring (d, OCT). Negative (blue) and positive (red) wind stress curl depict 3034 favourable upwelling and downwelling areas respectively. The data was extracted from Scatterometer Climatology of Ocean

- 3035 Winds (SCOW), described by Risien and Chelton (2008), mapped globally with a spatial grid resolution of  $1/4 \sim 1/4^{\circ}$ , estimated
  - 3036 from 10 years' period, ranging between September 1999 and August 2009, measured by NASA Quick Scatterometer (QuikSCAT).
  - 3037
  - 3038



\$040Figure 9: Bathymetry and major circulatory features in the Mozambique Channel and around Madagascar. Currents include the\$041South Equatorial Current (SEC), Northeast and Southeast Madagascar Current (NEMC and SEMC), South Indian\$042Countercurrent (SICC) and the Agulhas Current (AC). Shaded areas show the extent of the continental shelf to a depth of 200 m.\$043Green ellipses denote upwelling areas.



3046

Figure 10: Monthly mean chlorophyll-a concentration for February 2003, derived from Moderate Resolution Imaging S048 Spectroradiometer (MODIS) Aqua satellite (https://oceancolor.gsfc.nasa.gov/data/aqua/). Intermediate values beyond the continental shelf-edge highlight areas of elevated productivity off the Mozambique and Madagascar coasts that are primarily upwelling-driven. Abbreviations: Ponta Zavora, Cabo Delgado, Taolagnaro, Antsiranana.



3052

3053 3054 3055 Figure 11: Circulation patterns during (a) the NEM and (b) the SWM, showing the Somali Current (SC), South Equatorial Counter Current (SECC), East African Coastal Current (EACC), South Equatorial Current (SEC) and Northeast Madagascar Current (NMC). Green ellipses denote upwelling areas. Dark grey shading denotes depths within the 200 m isobath, and light

\$056 \$057 grey shading denotes depths from 200 to 500 m. Labels on land indicate Kenya (MEN), Tanzania (TAN), Mozambique (MOZ)

and Madagascar (MAS).



Figure 12: Average surface currents (m s<sup>-1</sup>) during (a) the NEM (DJF) and (b) the SWM (JJA) derived from daily altimetry (Copernicus Marine Environmental Monitoring Services, CMEMS) over the period 2001-2010 (25-km resolution); average SST (°C) during (c) the NEM and (d) the SWM derived from NOAA AVHRR Pathfinder Version 5 data over the period 1981-2012 (4-km resolution); and surface chlorophyll-*a* (mg m<sup>-3</sup>) during (e) the NEM and (f) the SWM derived from global SeaWiFS data

3063 over the period September 1997 - December 2010 (4-km resolution).



3066 Figure 13: Climatological SST (°C, Panel a and b) and vertical section of temperature (°C, Panel c and d) along the vertical section 3067 aligned roughly around 1000 m isobath (blue contour along the Somali coast in the top panels) for the month of June (left panels) 3068 and August (right panels). The climatology is computed from model (Modular Ocean Model, Version 5.1) interannual simulations 3069 for 1993-2018 (reproduced from Chatterjee et al., 2019; Lakshmi et al., 2020). As the monsoon onset during early June, 3070 southwesterly winds blow along the coast of Somalia (red dashed arrow) leading to offshore Ekman transport (which is stronger 3071 in the south than the northern part; see Panel a black dashed arrows) driven coastal upwelling (upward blue arrows; Panel c). 3072 Though the offshore transport is strongest in the south, the maximum upwelling (upsloping of thermocline) is seen along the front 3073 of the Great Whirl north of ~8°N (Panel c). Notably, offshore wind stress curl turns negative south of the Findlater Jet axis 3074 favorable for open ocean downwelling. As the monsoon peaks, this negative wind stress curl radiates downwelling Rossby waves 3075 (Panel b) which propagate westward and upon reaching the Somali coast deepen the thermocline there against the upwelling 3076 favorable winds (downward blue arrows; Panel d). Further, stronger winds during peak monsoon enhance wind driven mixing 3077 which further deepen the thermocline in most parts of the Somalia coast. By late summer, the upwelling remains confined to the 3078 front of the Great Whirl in the northern part of the Somalia coast.

- 3079
- 3080
- 3081



Figure 14: Monthly climatology of temperature from April to October. The data are from *North Indian Ocean Atlas* (Chatterjee et al. 2012). (a1-a4) Sea surface temperature from the eastern Arabian Sea. The black contour represents the 1000 m watercolumn depth, and the horizontal dashed lines are the 20°N and 8°N. (b1-b4) Vertical section of temperature at 20°N. (c1-c4) Vertical section of temperature at 8°N. The white contour is 26°C. The figure highlights how the upwelling evolves from premonsoon to post-monsoon season along the west coast of India. The upwelling sets earlier in the south and progresses slowly towards north. The upward tilt of the isopycnals, though weak, is evident at 20°N towards the end of the summer monsoon.





Figure 15: Climatology of (a) sea surface temperature from Terra MODIS, (b) sea-level anomaly from Aviso SSALTO/DUACS, (c) chlorophyll-a from SeaWIFS, (d) alongshore and (e) cross-shore wind pseudostress from OuikSCAT, and (f) alongshore current from OSCAR. The data were picked and the vectors were rotated based on the 1000 m contour (see Figure 15). Panels (a) and (c) are redrawn based on (Shankar et al., 2019).



Figure 16: Comparison of historical profiles of temperature, salinity and dissolved oxygen corresponding to peak upwelling months over the inner shelf off Kochi, southwest coast of India (From Gupta et al., 2016).



Figure 17: Chlorophyll a (mg m-3) images around Sri Lanka for (a) 1 July 1999, (b) 19 July 1999 and (c) 29 July 1999 obtained from OCM on board IRS-P4 OceanSat (From Vinayachandran et al., 2004).





3125

Figure 18: Hydrography along a section (normal to the coast) which lies approximately midway (~15 N) of the east cost of India. (a) potential density (g cm<sup>-3</sup>); (b) salinity (ppt); (c) temperature (°C). The scale shown in (b) also applies to (a) and (c). (From Shetye et al., 1991).


\$130262728293031323334-4.5-2.5-0.51.53.5\$131Figure 19: Forcing mechanisms of upwelling induced chlorophyll distribution in the northwestern Bay of Bengal. Comparison\$132of model simulated surface (a-e) chlorophyll, (f-j) MLD, and (k-o) SSS from CONTROL, NORIV, and HALFTAU experiments\$133averaged for the month of August. Contours shown are for chlorophyll, MLD, and salinity of 0.3 ug kg21, 20 m and 32 psu,\$134respectively. Shown are model simulations from a control run which included all the forcings (CONTROL), without river\$135runoff (NORIV) and with the magnitude of wind stress reduced by 50% (HALFTAU) (From Thushara and Vinayachandran,\$1362016)



3138 3139

Figure 20. Map of the Sumatra-Java upwelling region and surrounding area. Background color shade shows July-August-September mean climatological temperature at 100 m depth from World Ocean Atlas 2018 (Locarnini et al., 2018). Grey, black, and line arrows schematically indicate representative surface currents near the upwelling system (SEC: South Equatorial Current; SJCC: South Java Coastal Current; ITF: Indonesian throughflow) and a route of Kelvin wave propagation from the equatorial region down to the Sumatra and Java coasts.





Figure 21. Map of the Western Australian coast with thin black contours showing the 50, 200, 1000 and 3000m isobaths. Green arrows represent mean surface winds, red arrows indicate the Leeuwin Current, red schematic vortices indicates meso-scale eddies and blue arrows indicate the Capes and Ningaloo Currents (from Rossi et al., 2013b)



Figure 22. Climatological analysis of sporadic upwelling events. a) Hovmöller (latitude versus time) diagram of the mean

3152
3153
3154 number of "upwelling days" (CUI > 15 m/day during 3 days or more) per month and b) mean number of "upwelling days" per year, recorded from 1995-2010 (from Rossi et al. 2013b).



Figure 23: Hovmöller diagrams (latitude versus time) of a) the Ekman upwelling index (m/day, equivalent to vertical velocities), b) the geostrophic upwelling index (m/day, equivalent to vertical velocities), and c) composite upwelling index (in m/day of vertical velocities, a combination of the two previous components). Red colours represent a balance of forces favouring upwelling events (from Rossi et al., 2013b).



Figure 24. Annual distribution of chlorophyll estimated from SeaWiFS ocean colour data along the shelf break off the west coast of Australia from 26°- 32°S , 1998-2003 (from Koslow et al., 2008).



3167

Figure 25: Climatological (Locarnini, 2018) temperature (shading with scale shown to the right) averaged over 0-300m for the months of January and February (shaded) overlayed with wind vectors (m/s) from QuikSCAT Climatology (2000-2008) and thermocline (depth of 20 degree C isotherm, m) depth as the black contour lines. Reference vector for winds is given at the top right corner. The black box marked represents the Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge (SCTR). The surface flow indicated by upward and downward white arrows promotes upwelling leading to the formation of the SCTR. The white arrows aligned left is the South equatorial current (SEC) and right is the South equatorial counter currents (SECC). Redrawn after Vialard et al. (2009)



17502468100.0120.0250.050.10.2176Figure 26: Annual World Ocean Atlas (2005) (a) temperature and (b) nitrate concentration (in mmol N m<sup>-3</sup>) averaged between<br/>the surface and 80 m in the Indian Ocean. (c) SeaWiFS seasonal mean during austral summer (December–March) (mg m<sup>-3</sup>). (d)177Intraseasonal variability of SeaWiFS Chl during austral summer estimated by the averaged RMS of (Chl-Chl\*) between179December and March of years 1998–2007. (from Resplandy et al. (2009).



}181 }182 }183

Figure 27: Tuna catch in the Indian Ocean during the 1997/1998 IOD event (bottom panel) compared to catch in normal years (top panel). From Robinson et al. (2010), Copyright Inter-Research 2010.



is believed to partially supply the cross-equatorial thermocline flow. From Lee (2004)

}184
}185
}186
}186
}187